

# 英语语法 超图解

30天用思维导图  
战胜英语语法



高效率

用全世界高材生最多用的思维导图法  
图解复杂又难理解的语法观念

有计划

击败英语语法  
3大秘技

你的最后一本  
英语语法书!

最完整

英语图解学习大师  
朱懿婷 编著

20个必备语法观念

30个必学语法句型

40个必闪语法陷阱

收录英语语法三大重点  
项目，打下超扎实基础



中国纺织出版社



Best Publishing

更多书籍请关注：[www.iebook8.com](http://www.iebook8.com)



图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

英语语法超图解 : 30 天用思维导图战胜英语语法 / 朱懿婷编著. —北京 : 中国纺织出版社, 2012. 8

ISBN 978-7-5064-8729-0

I. ①英… II. ①朱… III. ①英语—语法—自学参考资料 IV. ①H314

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2012) 第 124289 号

原文书名 : 《英文文法超圖解——30 天用心智圖戰勝英文文法》

原作者名 : 朱懿婷

原出版社 : 貝斯特出版社有限公司

出版时间 : 2011 年 9 月

本书中文简体版经贝斯特出版社有限公司授权, 由中国纺织出版社独家出版发行。

本书内容未经出版者书面许可, 不得以任何方式或任何手段复制、转载或刊登。

著作权合同登记号 : 图字 : 01-2012-4183

---

策划编辑 : 朱健桦 张璞      责任编辑 : 张璞  
特约编辑 : 薛原              责任印制 : 储志伟

---

中国纺织出版社出版发行

地址 : 北京东直门南大街 6 号 邮政编码 : 100027

邮购电话 : 010-64168110 传真 : 010-64168231

<http://www.c-textilep.com>

E-mail: [faxing@c-textilep.com](mailto:faxing@c-textilep.com)

北京云浩印刷有限责任公司印刷 各地新华书店经销

2012 年 8 月第 1 版第 1 次印刷

开本 : 710×1000 1 / 16 印张 : 23

字数 : 450 千字 定价 : 39.80 元

---

凡购本书, 如有缺页、倒页、脱页, 由本社图书营销中心调换



# 英语语法 超图图解

30天用思维导图  
战胜英语语法

英语图解学习大师  
朱懿婷◎编著



中国纺织出版社



## PREFACE

## 作者序

## 关于英语

我有一阵子，相当羡慕可以出国留学的人。因为工作上常常遇到具有“什么都不管，只要喝过洋墨水就是好人才”这种偏执想法的上司。

但是在社会上摸爬滚打五六年之后，我渐渐地也可以辨认出喝过洋墨水这件事背后带来的具体意义，以及老板看不到的“致命盲点”。后来，我就不再太过于羡慕这种人，甚至有“不出国英语也可以说得比他们更溜”的信心。

这绝对不是王婆卖瓜心态喔！在与国外客户沟通 meeting 的经验中，我发现外国人在口语交谈上真的不是那么注重语法能力，重点是谈吐的气度和话题的深度。谈吐的气度来自于个人的自信心，而话题的深度则来自于个人的素养和单词的能力了。

这就是我开始对英语教学有兴趣的起源。

我希望可以通过自身的经验，搭配一些我在职场上学习到的科学方法，让学英语这件事不用非得花大钱才行。我绝对认同到国外留学可以增进英语能力，但我认为，与其说“国外留学”这件事增强了英语能力，不如说是增强了个人“开口说话的勇气”及“了解西方文化的程度”，让你更能够得心应手地与外国人交谈。

说到底，那语法到底重不重要呢？我觉得这件事就像每个学生都想问的：“学历到底重不重要？”这件事一模一样。“语法和学历，都是要等你懂了、拿到了，才可以说不重要。”这就是我对语法重要程度的理解。

## 关于思维导图

我个人认为我年纪虽然不是很大，但是脑力实在衰退得很严重，但是偏偏在工作上又有许多项目必须同步处理，因此有一段时间我的偏头痛很严重，我想是因为“忘东忘西”这件事的压力实在太大了吧！后来我偶然接触到“思维导图”它简直



是我职场上的良师益友，让我有效地管理项目进度及研发，以及维系客户关系。甚至，生活中的购物清单、人生计划、减肥进度，我都是依赖思维导图来管理。也因为它真的太好用了，我打算将我生命中所有难以解决的问题都丢到思维导图里面试试看。

就这样，我把学生时代最讨厌的英语语法用思维导图重新整理了一遍。就这样，《英语语法超图解：30 天用思维导图战胜英语语法》这本书，诞生了。

#### 关于本书

《英语语法超图解：30 天用思维导图战胜英语语法》是我人生中第一个惊喜、第一个最完整的自我实践，也是我的第一本著作。

我也很高兴能够与中国纺织出版社合作，一个与我有着共同信念的优秀出版社。我们都相信学习是必须的，是生活中每天都要做的事。但正因为如此，学习应该是一件轻松且容易达成的事，而不是一件一想到就痛苦而难以坚持的事。所以，我真心地希望，这本书可以帮助到所有对英语持有恐惧、对语法有偏见的人。当你遇到生命中、职场上一个绝佳机会时，英语能力将不再是你心中的痛、不再是你成功的绊脚石。



朱懿婷 2012.7



# 创造网络营销财富 从分享开始

网购省钱+推广赚钱 零投资零风险

只要努力 月赚万元不是梦



项目荣获《2014年重质守信 3.15满意单位》

加入团队后，手把手教你如何推广与操作

无限推广，不断累积倍增你的团队，早日实现不在职的收入！

具体详情请点击[此处进入页面](#)



我爱书吧版主亲自带团队 欢迎你的加入早日获得财富自由

即不是直销 更不是传销 政府支持的产业 咨询QQ: 1874243008



# 语法 KO 进度表

请依照以下的进度表，填上你的预定学习日期，一口气 KO 你的语法恶梦吧！  
完成进度的当天记得划上大叉叉，可以刺激学习欲望喔！

学习 天数	01	02	03	04	05	06	07
预定 学习日							
学习 内容	语法概念 1～3	语法概念 4～6	语法概念 7~9	语法概念 10～12	语法概念 13~15	语法概念 16～18	语法概念 19～20
学习 天数	08	09	10	11	12	13	14
预定 学习日							
学习 内容	必学句型 1～2	必学句型 3～4	必学句型 5～6	必学句型 7～8	必学句型 9～10	必学句型 11～12	必学句型 13～14
学习 天数	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
预定 学习日							
学习 内容	必学句型 15～16	必学句型 17～18	必学句型 19～20	必学句型 21～22	必学句型 23～24	必學句型 25～26	必学句型 27～28
学习 天数	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
预定 学习日							
学习 内容	必学句型 29～30	语法陷阱 1～5	语法陷阱 6～10	语法陷阱 11～15	语法陷阱 16～20	语法陷阱 21～25	语法陷阱 26～30
学习 天数	29	30					
预定 学习日							
学习 内容	语法陷阱 31～35	语法陷阱 36～40					

# 目录

第一阶段：Day 01~07

## 20个一定要知道的概念

### Step 1

先搞懂概念与时态

01	01. 什么是英语语法？ .....	014
	02. 一般现在时 vs. 一般过去时 .....	021
	03. 将来时 .....	026
02	04. 现在进行时 vs. 过去进行时 vs. 将来进行时 .....	032
	05. 现在完成时 vs. 过去完成时 vs. 将来完成时 .....	039
	06. 完成进行时（现在 vs. 过去 vs. 将来） .....	046

### Step 2

了解英语中关键的关键—单词

03	07. 形容词（含比较级 & 最高级） .....	052
	08. 副词（含比较级 & 最高级） .....	060
	09. 动词短语（不可分离 vs. 可分离） .....	065
04	10. 系动词 vs. 感官动词 .....	070
	11. 动名词与不定式 .....	075
	12. 连词 .....	084
05	13. 介词 .....	088
	14. 短语 .....	095



# Step 3

该如何使用进阶的句子？

15. 虚拟语气	101
16. 被动语态	106
17. 附加问句	112
18. 关系代名词	117
19. 从句（名词从句、形容词从句、副词从句……）	123
20. 倒装句	127

## 第二阶段：Day 08~22

# 30个一定要学的句型

## Level 1

基础观念马上建立！（程度分级：初中英语）

01. 那里有时髦的女孩！	136
There is a modern girl.	
句型 01 There be (not)...	
There is enough food for all of us.	
延伸 There is (not) ...+enough (+...)+ to do...	
02. 要不要喝点水啊？	140
Would you like some water?	
句型 02 Would you like...?	
What about another cup of tea?	
延伸 How about / What about...?	
03. 你花了多长时间从车站走回家？	143
How long does it take you to walk home from the bus stop?	
句型 03 How long / soon / often...?	
04. 他太胖了，所以他不可能追到校花！	146
He is too fat to get the school queen!	
句型 04 too...+(for sb. / sth.)+to...	

09 He is so sick that he can't go to work today.

└ 延伸 so... that...

10 05. 今天我们去看《变形金刚3》吧! ..... 150

Let's go to see Transformers 3 today!

└ 句型 05 Let's / Let us...

Why not go for a walk after dinner?

└ 延伸 Why not / Why don't we...?

11 06. 不是所有人都想要费德勒赢, 好吗? ..... 154

Not everybody like you want Federer to win, Ok?

└ 句型 06 Not everybody / both / all / every...

12 07. 难怪你上课时总是想睡觉! ..... 158

It is no wonder (that) you always feel sleepy in class.

└ 句型 07 (It is) no wonder (that)...

13 08. 完成这个专案得花上七个工作日呢! ..... 161

It will take 7 working days to finish the project !

└ 句型 08 It takes (sb.)+some time+to do sth.

14 09. 你觉得《哈利·波特》的结局怎么样? ..... 164

What do you think of/about the ending of Harry Potter?

└ 句型 09 What do you think of / about...?

15 10. 我妈叫我下课后就马上回家。 ..... 167

My mother asks me to go home as soon as the class is over.

└ 句型 10 ...as soon as...

## Level 2

可以开始简单英语会话喽! (程度分级: 高中第一~二册)

16 11. 除非你跟我们一起去, 否则我是不会跟你哥去看电影的。 ..... 171

I won't go to the movie with your brother unless you go with us.

└ 句型 11 unless...

I won't leave here until you give me the money.

└ 延伸 until ...

17 12. 苹果公司不知道 iPad 2 会不会是畅销产品。 ..... 175

APPLE doesn't know whether iPad 2 will hit or not.

└ 句型 12 whether...or...



13

Does anyone know if he will come today?

└ 延伸 if...

14

13. 你不一起去吗? ..... 179

Don't you want to come alone?

└ 句型 13 Isn't (Don't / Can't / Won't...)+sb....?

It's a beautiful place, isn't it?

└ 延伸 附加问句

14. 多美的一个包啊! ..... 182

How beautiful this bag is!

└ 句型 4 What / How...!

She is such a beautiful woman.

└ 延伸 such a / an...

15

15. 你介意让我先上厕所吗? ..... 186

Do you mind if I use the toilet first?

└ 句型 15 Do / Would you mind...?

16. 这场比赛不只令人屏息还令人非常难忘! ..... 189

This game is not only breath-taking but also unforgettable.

└ 句型 16 not only...but also...

16

17. 了解世界趋势对于学生来说相当重要。 ..... 192

It's also important for students to know the current trend of the world.

└ 句型 17 It+adj+of / for sb.+to do...

Learning English is an important thing for us to do.

└ 延伸 V-ing+is+adj...

18. 纳达尔不认为这次发球出界了。 ..... 196

Nadal doesn't think that this serve is outside.

└ 句型 18 Sb. do / does not think / suppose / believe that...

17

19. 该是时候让贝拉来决定她未来的职业了。 ..... 199

It's time for Bella to decide her career.

└ 句型 19 It's time (for sb.) to do sth....

It is time (that) we had classes.

└ 延伸 It's (high / about) time that...

- 17 20. 李娜是如此的努力以至于他可以赢得法网冠军。 ..... 203  
Lina works so hard that she could win the first prize  
in French Open Tennis Championship.  
句型 20 so that...

## Level 3

看到老外也不用怕！（程度分级：高中第三～六册）

- 18 21. 起床，否则你开学第一天就要迟到了！ ..... 207  
Get up, or you will be late on the first day to school.  
句型 21 or / otherwise...

22. 你每天水喝得越多，你就会越健康。 ..... 210  
The more water you drink every day, the healthier you will be.  
句型 22 the + 比较级, the + 比较级

- 19 23. 我恐怕无法去看 Lady Gaga 的北京演唱会了。 ..... 213  
I'm afraid I can't go to Lady Gaga's concert in Beijing.  
句型 23 I'm afraid (that)...

24. 罗杰·费德勒就是那个打破多项世界网球纪录的人。 ..... 216  
It is Roger Federer who broke many world records of tennis.  
句型 24 It is / was...that / who...

- 20 25. 这很明显是裁判误判了。 ..... 219  
It is obvious that the judge made a mistake.  
句型 25 It is obvious / clear that...  
It seems (that) he was late for the train.  
延伸 It seems / seemed that / as if...  
It is said that the food in this supermarket is cheaper.  
延伸 It is / was said (reported / hoped) that...

26. 这部电影实在太精彩了，所以大家都在讨论它。 ..... 223  
This is such a good movie that everyone is talking about it.  
句型 26 so / such...that...

- 21 27. 你最好趁夏天来之前开始减肥。 ..... 226  
You'd better begin to lose weight before summer comes.  
句型 27 You'd better (not)...  
You are supposed to support your parents.  
延伸 be (not) supposed to...



21	28. 就算要排队等一个小时我也要买到这家店的甜甜圈。..... 230
	Even though I have to wait for an hour, I still want to buy donuts from this shop.
	└ 句型 28 Even though/if
22	29. 我妈要我打扫房间。..... 233
	My mother had me clean the room.
	└ 句型 29 have+sb. ...
	30. 不管发生什么事，我都一定会支持我的家人。..... 236
	No matter what happens, I will support my family.
	└ 句型 30 no matter+ 疑问词 ...

### 第三阶段：Day 23~30

# 40个不能不闪的语法陷阱

## Trap 1

单词陷阱。同义单词辨析篇

23	01. ago vs. before..... 240
	02. any vs. some ..... 243
	03. asleep vs. sleepy ..... 247
	04. bring vs. take vs. carry ..... 250
	05. hope vs. wish..... 253
24	06. everyday vs. every day ..... 256
	07. fit vs. suit..... 259
	08. hear vs. listen to ..... 262
	09. speak vs. say vs. talk vs. tell ..... 265
	10. spend vs. cost ..... 269
25	11. travel vs. trip ..... 272
	12. wait vs. expect ..... 275
	13. worth vs. worthy..... 278
	14. occur vs. happen vs. take place ..... 281
	15. can vs may vs. might ..... 284

26	16.maybe vs. may be .....	287
	17. during vs. while vs. when .....	290
	18. prefer vs. rather .....	293

## Trap 2

单词陷阱. 一词多义使用篇

26	01. think 的用法 .....	296
	02. time 的用法 .....	299
27	03. help 的用法 .....	302
	04. hurt 的用法 .....	305
	05. mind 的用法 .....	308
	06. welcome 的用法 .....	312

## Trap 3

语法陷阱. 语法观念辨析篇

	01. 动词+动名词 vs. 动词+不定式 .....	315
28	02. 一般过去时 vs. 过去完成时 .....	319
	03. 否定疑问句的回答 .....	322
	04. 形容词的词序问题 .....	325
	05. 间接问句的用法 .....	328

## Trap 4

语法陷阱. 语法使用差异篇

	01. have been to vs. have gone to .....	331
29	02. neither...nor vs. either...or .....	334
	03. other vs. the other vs. another .....	337
	04. shameful vs. ashamed .....	340
	05. sometime vs. sometimes vs. some time vs. some times .....	343
	06. one 的指示代词 .....	346
30	07. so vs. such .....	349
	08. what vs. which .....	352
	09. whether vs. if .....	355
	10. could vs. would .....	358
	11. than 在比较句型中的用法 .....	361



单词陷阱.  
一字多义使用篇

单词陷阱.  
类义单词辨析篇

3~30

# 不能不 的语法陷阱

or...

(Can't/Won't...) + sb. ...?

...!

you mind ...?

ut also ...

of/for sb. + to do ...

, not think/suppose/believe that ...

(sb.) to do sth. ...

可以开始简单  
英语会话了!

基础观念马上建立!

看到阿豆仔  
也不用怕!

第二阶段: Day 08~22

# 30个一定要学的句型

08. hear vs. listen to

09. speak vs. say vs. talk vs. tell

10. spend vs. cost

11. travel 與 trip

12. wait vs. expect

13. worth 與 worthy

14. occur vs. happen vs. take place

15. can v.s may vs. might

16. may be vs. maybe

17. during vs. while vs. when

18. prefer vs. rather

15. 虚拟语气

16. 被动语态

17. 附加问句

18. 关系代名词

19. 从句 (名词从句、形容词从句、副词从句)

20. 倒装句



- 04. hurt 的用法
- 05. mind 的用法
- 06. welcome 用法

- 01. 什么是英语语法?
- 02. 一般现在时 vs 一般过去时
- 03. 将来时
- 04. 现在进行时 vs. 过去进行时 vs. 将来进行时
- 05. 现在完成时 vs. 过去完成时 vs. 将来完成时
- 06. 完成进行时 ( 现在 vs. 过去 vs. 将来 )

先搞懂概念与时态

第一阶段：Day 01~07

# 20个一定要知道的语法概念

了解英语中  
关键的关键一单词

该如何使用  
进阶的句子?

- 07. 形容词 (含比较级 & 最高级)
- 08. 副词 (含比较级 & 最高级)
- 09. 双字动词 (可拆 vs. 不可拆)
- 10. 系动词 vs. 感官动词
- 11. 动名词与不定式
- 12. 连词
- 13. 介词
- 14. 短语

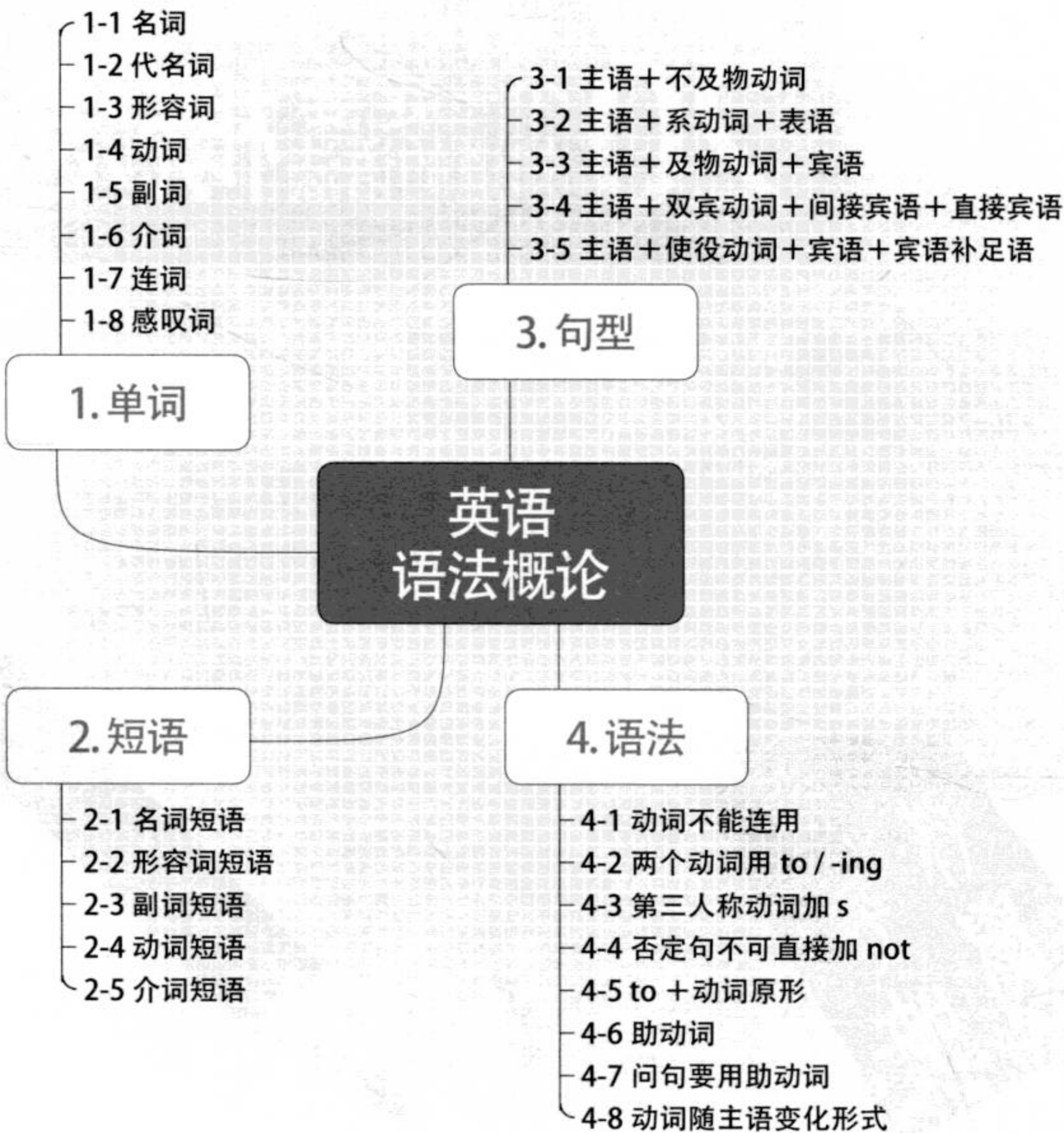
- 01 There be (not)...
- 02 Would you like...?
- 03 How long/soon/often...?
- 04 too... + (for sb./sth.) + to...
- 05 Let's/Let us...
- 06 Not everybody/both/all/every...
- 07 (It is) no wonder (that)...
- 08 It takes (sb.) + some time + to do sth.
- 09 What do you think of/about...?
- 10 ...as soon as...





## 01 什么是英语语法？

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping





英语语法，指英语中语言的结构规律，主要包括“单词、短语、句型和语法”四个要素。下面就根据这四个要素做细节说明：

1. 单词

英语单词依据在句子中的作用，可分为八大词类，分别为名词、代词、形容词、动词、副词、介词、连词和感叹词。以下为详细说明：

**1-1. 名词：**表示人、地、事、物等的词。名词分为可数名词和不可数名词，可数名词前要加冠词 a / an，不可数名词前要加定冠词 the，例如：a book, an apple, the air。

**1-2. 代名：**表示代替名词或名词短语的形式用词。代名词可以分为：

01 人称代词	I, you, his...
02 指示代词	this ,that, those...
03 不定代词	some, any, one, other, another, all, every...
04 疑问代词	what, who, which...
05 关系代词	that, which, who, whose...

**1-3. 形容词：**用来修饰名词或代词的词。形容词可分为：

01 性状形容词	表示物品的状态或是性质。 a <b>good</b> student（一位好学生） 3 <b>young</b> people（三个年轻人） an <b>American</b> movie（一部美国电影）
02 代名词形容词	具有代名词功能，后面需接名词。并可细分为：指示形容词、不定形容词、所有格形容词、疑问形容词及关系形容词。
2-1 指示形容词	<b>These</b> 2 girls are from Canada.（这两个女孩来自加拿大。）
2-2 不定形容词	I need <b>some</b> new ideas.（我需要一些新想法。）
2-3 所有格形容词	<b>Your</b> dress is so elegant.（你的洋装好优雅。）
2-4 疑问形容词	<b>Whose</b> pen is this?（这是谁的笔？）



2-5 关系形容词	I have a classmate <b>whose</b> sister is a famous singer. (我有个姐姐是知名歌手的同学。)
03 数量形容词	用来表示数目和份量的形容词。 可分为：不定数量形容词、基数数词、序数数词、倍数数词。
3-1 不定数量形容词	Linda has so <b>many</b> friends to play with. (琳达有很多可以玩在一起的朋友。)
3-2 基数词	My mother has five sisters. (我妈妈有五个姐妹。)
3-3 序数词	This is my <b>first</b> time to travel alone. (这是我第一次独自旅行。)
3-4 倍数词	<b>Half</b> of my clothes is black. (我有一半的衣服都是黑色的。)

**1-4. 动词：**是用以表示动作或状态的词，例如：be, go, get, have, run, send 等。另外，动词在使用上，要特别注意时态和语态的变化。

时态	
一般时	一般现在时
	一般过去时
将来时	将来时
进行时	现在进行时
	过去进行时
	将来进行时
完成时	现在完成时
	过去完成时
	将来完成时
	现在完成进行时
	过去完成进行时
	将来完成进行时



语态
主动语态
被动语态

**1-5. 副词：**可用来修饰动词、形容词和其他副词，也可以用来修饰短语。副词分为：

方式副词	carefully, successfully, slowly...
地点副词	here, there, home, abroad, south, outside...
时间副词	now, yesterday, today, ago...
频率副词	sometimes, barely, hardly, once, daily, twice...
程度副词	entirely, much, many, almost, very...
疑问副词	where, when, why...
连接副词	however, meanwhile, besides...

**1-6. 介词：**通常放在名词和代词之前，用来表示名词或代词和其前面词的关系。介词从形式上来分有四种：

简单介词	只有一个单词	at, before, from, under...
合成介词	由两个单词合成	into, upon, outside, without...
双重介词	由两个介词组成	from behind, till after...
短语介词	由两个或多个单词组成	at the end of, according to, because of...

**1-7. 连词：**用来连接单词、短语、从句和句子的词。连词分为：

并列连词	连接同等地位的单词、短语及从句	both... and..., not only.. but also..., as well as...
从属连词	引导从属从句	so... that..., such... that..



**1-8. 感叹词：**用以表示强烈的情绪和感情的一种声音或叫喊。例如：Hello! Hurrah! Hi! Oh! 等等。

2. 短语

短语是由两个或两个以上的英语单词所组合的词语，不包含主语和动词，可以构成句子的一部分，也可以用来当名词、形容词和副词使用。短语主要分为以下五大种类：

01 名词短语	<b>To tell a lie</b> is wrong. (说谎是错的。)
02 形容词短语	<b>The best way</b> to lose weight is to exercise more! (减肥最好的方法就是多运动。)
03 副词短语	I can't finish this book <b>without Linda's help</b> . (没有琳达的帮助我不可能完成这本书。)
04 动词短语	She <b>takes care</b> of her children. (她照顾她的小孩。)
05 介词短语	He stood <b>in front of</b> the door. (他站在门前面。)

3. 句型

句子是按照一定的语法规律组成的，表达一个完整的意义。一个句子一般由两部分构成，即主语部分和动词部分，这两部分也是句子中最主要的成分。而句子的次要成分包括宾语，形容词，副词，主语补语等。首先介绍一下，在一般语法说明中容易使用到的英语缩写：

S	subject	= 主语
V	verb	= 动词
vt.	transitive verb	= 及物动词
vi.	intransitive verb	= 不及物动词
O	object	= 宾语
d.o	direct object	= 直接宾语
i.o.	indirect object	= 间接宾语
C	complement	= 补语
S.C	subject complement	= 主语补语
O.C	object complement	= 宾语补语

以下为英语五大基本句型：

句型 01：S + V（主语+不及物动词）

Everybody laughed.（大家都笑了。）  
S V

句型 02：S + V + SC（主语+系动词+表语）

此结构中的动词常为系动词，例如：look, seem, appear, prove, become, turn, sound, taste, keep, stay... 等。

The girl in red dress looks cute.（那个穿红色洋装的女孩看起来好可爱。）  
S V SC

句型 03：S + V + O（主语+及物动词+宾语）

Nobody could answer the question.（没有人可以回答这个问题。）  
S V O

句型 04：S + V + O<sub>1</sub> + O<sub>2</sub>（主语+双宾动词+间接宾语+直接宾语）

间接宾语通常会“人”，直接宾语通常会“物品”。

Mary lent me her car.（玛莉把她的车借给我。）  
S V O<sub>1</sub> O<sub>2</sub>

句型 05：S + V + O + OC（主语+使役动词+宾语+宾语补语）

They named this cat "Tiger".（他们把这只猫命名为“老虎”。）  
S V O OC

4. 语法

英语语法有一定的规则，它是客观存在的，而不是语言学家规定的。语言学家只是对其进行归纳、整理，并选择恰当的方式把它们描述出来。学习英语语法得注意如下基本规则：



规则 01：两个动词是不能连在一起的。

- ✗ I like play piano. (我喜欢弹钢琴。)
- ☑ I like to play piano.

规则 02：如果一定要同时用两个动词，第二个动词的前面必须加“to”，或是加上“-ing”。例如：

- ✗ I like swim. (我喜欢游泳。)
- ☑ I like to swim. / I like swimming.

规则 03：主语如果是第三人称单数，现在时中的动词必须加“s”，例如：

- ✗ She sing very well. (她歌唱得很好。)
- ☑ She sings very well.

规则 04：绝大多数的否定句，不能直接加 not，必须加上助动词或使役动词。例如：

- ✗ I not want to go. (我不想离开。)
- ☑ I don't want to go.

规则 05：在不定式“to”的后面，必须用动词原形，例如：

- ✗ She wants to becomes a good teacher. (她想要变成一位好老师。)
- ☑ She wants to become a good teacher.

规则 06：英语中有所谓的助动词。英语中有很多助动词，除了 do 外，can, may, might, would, will, must 也是助动词。例如：

- ✗ You must practiced your English every day. (你必须每天练习英语。)
- ☑ You must practice your English every day.

规则 07：大部分的英语问句都要包含助动词，例如：

- Do** you like playing basketball? (你喜欢打篮球吗?)
- How many books **do** you have? (你有多少本书?)

规则 08：特殊动词随主语变化，另外，英语中有些动词因主语不同而有所变形，例如 be 动词。

- I **am** a good student. (我是一位好学生。)
- She **has** a big heart. (她有宽大的胸襟。)
- They **have** been to Paris. (他们去过巴黎。)

# Day01

Step 1 先搞懂概念与时态

## 02 一般现在时 vs. 一般过去时

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping

02 一般现在时 vs. 一般过去时

- 1.1 现在时刻发生的动作或状态
- 1.2 经常性或习惯性的动作
- 1.3 主语具备的性格、能力和本质特征等
- 1.4 客观事实、普遍真理、名言、警句或谚语等
- 1.5 按规定、时刻表、计划或安排要发生的动作
- 1.6 与时间副词连用表将来式
- 1.7 以 here、there 引导之倒装句表正在发生之事

#### 1. 现在时使用时机

### 一般现在时 vs. 一般过去时

#### 2. 过去时使用时机

- 2.1 表示过去特定时间发生的事件、动作
- 2.2 表示过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态
- 2.3 表示过去经常或反复发生的动作



一般现在时表示经常性、习惯性的动作、行为或者现在的某种状况；一般过去时表示过去某一时间内发生的动作或存在的状态，常与表示过去的时间副词连用，例如：yesterday, last night / week, a month ago, in 1990's 等。

### 1. 现在时使用时机

与现在时动词连用，依照使用时机分为：

#### 1-1. 现在时刻发生的动作或状态。

It's five o'clock now. (现在五点钟了。)

#### 1-2. 经常性或习惯性的动作，常与 always, usually, often, sometimes 等频率副词连用。

We have three meals every day. (我们每天吃三顿饭。)

#### 1-3. 主语具备的性格、能力和本质特征等。

He likes playing soccer. (他喜欢踢足球。)

#### 1-4. 客观事实、普遍真理、名言、警句或谚语等。

The earth goes around the sun. (地球绕着太阳转。)

#### 1-5. 按规定、时刻表、计划或安排要发生的动作。

通常会用一般现在时表示将来的状态。常用的动词有：begin, start, stop, arrive, come, go, leave, return, open, close, be 等。例如：

School begins the day after tomorrow. (学校后天开学。)

#### 1-6. 在由 when, before, after, until, as soon as 等连接的时间副词从句和 if 引导的条件副词从句，以一般现在时表示将来的动作。

Remember to turn off the light before you leave. (离开之前记得关上电灯。)

#### 1-7. 在由 here、there 引导的倒装句中，表示此刻正在发生的动作。

There goes the bell. (铃响了。)

### 2. 过去时使用时机

#### 2-1. 表示过去特定时间发生的动作或状态。

My dad won the music award last year. (我爸去年赢得了一项音乐奖。)

#### 2-2. 表示过去经常或反复发生的动作。

She often came to help me when I was in trouble.  
(我遇到麻烦的时候她总是来帮助我。)

另外，若是要表示过去的“习惯性”动作，可用 **would, used to** 来表达，例如：  
**He used to go to school by bus.**（他过去经常坐公共汽车去上课。）

## 02 延伸用法，事半功倍！

Learning Plus!

### 1. 一般现在时 vs. 一般过去时的“相同点”

两者均可表示人的性格、特征、爱好以及习惯，常与频率副词 **often, sometimes, seldom, usually, always, once a week** 等连用。

**I often play basketball.**（我常常打篮球。）

**I often played basketball when I was at school.**

（我以前在学校的时候常常打篮球。）

### 2. 一般现在时 vs. 一般过去时的“不同点”

1. 一般现在时表示现阶段发生的动作或状态，以及永恒不变的事实、自然规律，常与时间副词 **today, every day, every morning, on Sunday** 等连用。

**I ride bike to school every day.**（我每天都骑自行车上学。）

**Springs return in March.**（春天会在三月到来。）

2. 一般过去时表示过去阶段发生的动作或状态，常与时间副词 **yesterday, last year, last night, the day before yesterday, this morning, two days ago** 等连用。

**I lost my mobile phone yesterday.**（我昨天弄丢了你的手机。）

**She met her ex-boyfriend on the street the day before yesterday.**

（她前天在路上遇到了她的前男友。）

## 03 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. **Shelly is my best friend since 10 years ago.**

雪莉从 10 年前开始就是我最好的朋友。



02. I get up at seven every day.

我每天都七点钟起床。

---

03. She speaks English very well.

她英语说得很好。

---

04. We lived in Thailand ten years ago.

我们十年前住在泰国。

---

05. It was very hot yesterday.

昨天天气很热。

---

06. When I was a child, I often read comic books.

我小的时候经常看漫画书。

---

07. Did you have a good time last night?

你昨天晚上玩得开心吗？

---

08. She stayed in Paris for almost a month.

她在巴黎待了将近一个月。

---

09. Wendy comes from Canada and speaks good French.

温蒂来自加拿大，而且说得一口好法语。

---

10. Mandy doesn't know how to read the map.

曼蒂不会看地图。

## 04 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请填入正确时态的动词。

01. I often \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to school by bus.

02. He \_\_\_\_\_ (play) basketball every day.

03. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) hungry now.

04. They \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the ZOO yesterday.
05. Mr. Smith \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to Hong Kong last Sunday.
06. His mother \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV for 8 hours last night.
07. There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a shop not long ago.
08. I \_\_\_\_\_ (need) a glass of water.
09. She \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a student two years ago.
10. The river \_\_\_\_\_ (run) to the ocean.

正确答案及题目译文：

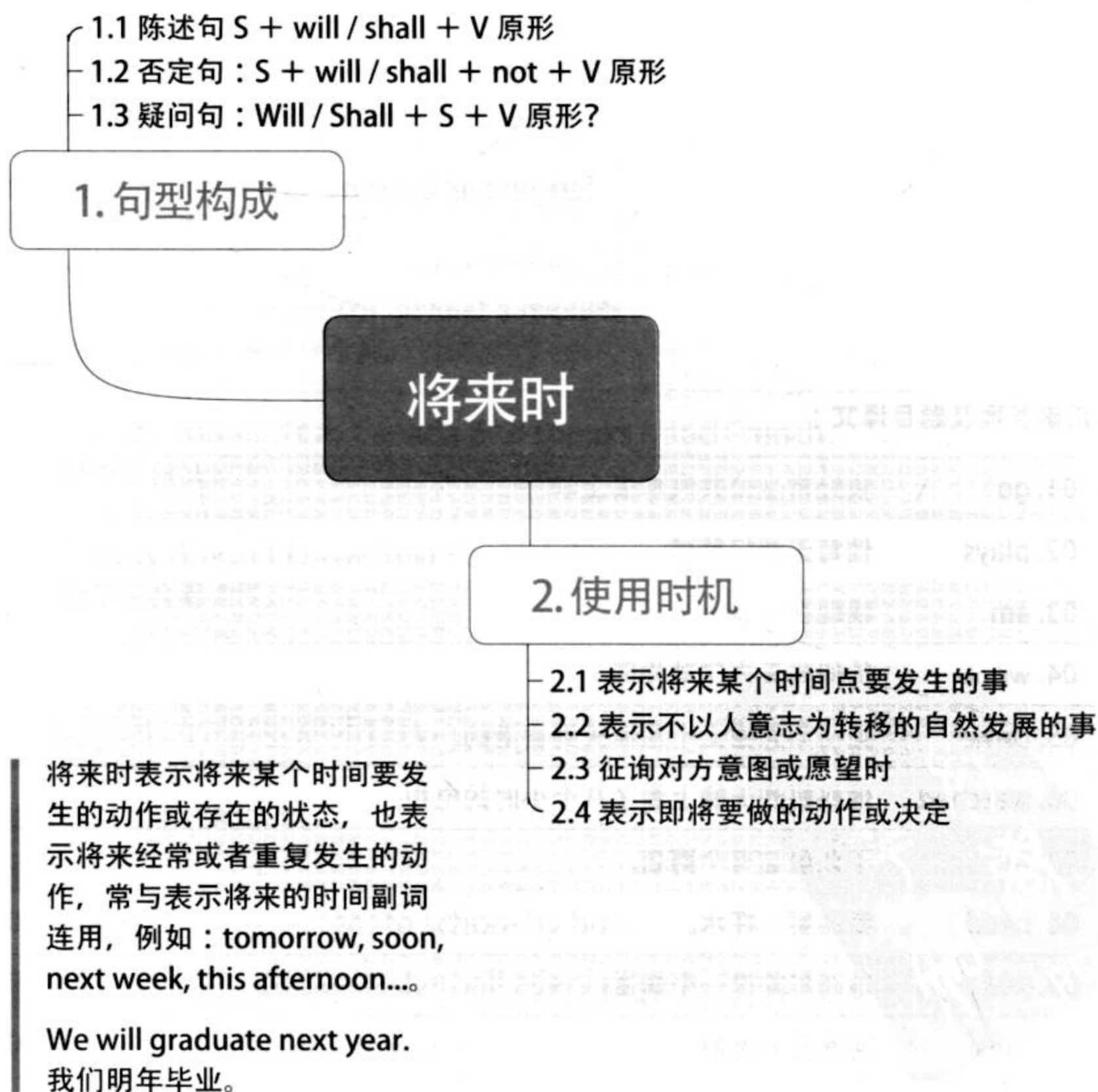
01. go	我经常坐公共汽车去上学。
02. plays	他每天都打篮球。
03. am	我现在很饿。
04. went	他们昨天去了动物园。
05. came	史密斯先生上个星期天到香港的。
06. watched	他妈妈昨天晚上看了八个小时的电视。
07. was	不久前这有个商店。
08. need	我需要一杯水。
09. was	她两年前是一个学生。
10. runs	河水流入大海。



Step 1 先搞懂概念与时态

## 03 将来时

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping



## 1. 将来时的句型构成

### 1-1. 陈述句：S + will / shall + V 原形

第一人称 I, we 用 shall 或 will, 其余人称都用 will。

I will call you this afternoon. (我下午会打电话给你。)

He believes that he will win the Best Sales of the Year.

(他深信他会赢得年度最佳业务员奖。)

### 1-2. 否定句：S + will / shall + not + V 原形

Because John failed his final exam, so his parents will not let him join the band. (约翰的父母不会让他参加乐团，因为他的期末考试考得太差了。)

### 1-3. 疑问句：Will / Shall + S + V 原形？

Shall we dance? (我们来跳舞吧？)

## 2. 将来时使用时机

### 2-1. 表示将来某个时间点要发生的事

She will go to visit the British Museum tomorrow. (她明天会去参观大英博物馆。)

### 2-2. 表示不以人意志为转移的自然发展的事。

Jack will be 20 next year. (杰克明年将满 20 岁。)

### 2-3. 在疑问句中用来征询听话人意图或愿望。

Will you go shopping with me? (你要和我一起逛街吗？)

### 2-4. 表示说话时马上要做的事，也就是临时决定要做的动作。

A: Tom is in hospital now. He is serious ill. (汤姆现在在医院。他病得很严重。)

B: Oh, I'm sorry to hear that, I will go and see him. (太不幸了，我马上去探望他。)

## 02 延伸用法，事半功倍！

Learning Plus!

### 1. 用 “be going to + 动词原形” 表示将来

#### 1. 表示打算或计划在最近或将来要做的事。

My friend and I are going to travel together this summer.

(我和我朋友打算今年夏天一起去旅游。)



## 2. 表示根据某种迹象，在最近或将来将要发生的事情。

Dark clouds are gathering. It is going to rain. (乌云在聚集，看来要下雨了。)

### 2. 用“be to + 动词原形”表示将来

#### 1. 表示按计划、安排要做的事，具有“必要”的强制性意义。

The meeting is to take place tonight. (今晚召开会议。)

#### 2. 表示约定、责任、命令或注定要发生的动作。

Our plan is to be a failure. (我们的计划注定会失败。)

#### 3. 官方计划或决定 (常见于报纸或广播)。

The President is to visit USA next week. (总统将于下个星期出访美国。)

#### 4. 用“be about to + 动词原形”表示将来。表示 (按计划) 即将发生的动作或情况。

My grandpa is about to retire. (我祖父就要退休了。)

She was about to go out when I arrived. (我来的时候她正准备出门。)

### 3. 用“一般现在时”表示将来

表示一个按照规定、计划、安排或时刻表而即将要发生的情况。通常句中都会包含一个表示将来的时间副词。

The train leaves at three this afternoon. (火车将在下午3点出发。)

The film begins in ten minutes. (电影十分钟后开始放映。)

#### TIPS!

时间副词、条件副词从句中，从句一般用现在时表示将来，而主句则用将来时。

I will go shopping when I am free.

(我空闲的时候就去逛街。)

### 4. 用“现在进行时”表示将来

表示即将发生的将来，多与表示移动的动词 come, go, arrive, leave, start, take off 等连用。

The doctor is coming to check you in 5 minutes.

(医生 5 分钟之内就会为你做检查。)

The train is leaving. (火车离开了。)

### 5. 用 “There will + be” 表示将来

There will be + 名词 + 其他补语, 但无论后面的是单数名词还是复数名词, be 动词必须用原形。

There will be a conference call at 3 p.m. tomorrow. (明天下午 3 点有个电话会议。)

### 6. 祈使句 + 将来时

句型: 祈使句 + and / or + 将来时 + (will)

Work hard or you will fail. (努力工作否则你就会失败。)

Work hard and you will succeed. (努力工作你就会成功。)

## 03 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. My sister will go to Paris on vacation.

我姐姐要去巴黎度假。

02. I'll be a good teacher as long as I can pass this test.

只要我能通过这个测验, 我就能成为一名优秀的教师。

03. He is going to work next week.

下星期他要去工作。

04. I am going to have a picnic with my co-workers in a few weeks.

几星期后我要和我的同事们一起野餐。

05. Will you leave for Hong Kong tomorrow?

你明天要去香港吗?



06. He is to come to see me at four this afternoon.

他今天下午4点会来见我。

07. I will meet you at 10 a.m. in the airport tomorrow, Ok?

我们明天早上10点在机场见面，好吗？

08. She was about to leave when the phone rang.

她正准备出门的时候，电话响了。

09. We are about to finish this project. Don't give up now.

我们快要完成这个项目了，千万不要现在放弃！

10. If it rains tomorrow, the picnic will postpone to next weekend.

如果明天下雨，野餐就延期到下个周末举行。

## 04 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出题目中最适合的选项。

01. He will write to his father as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ Italy.

☐ A arrived

☐ B arrives

☐ C is arriving

☐ D will arrive

02. My father \_\_\_\_\_ fifty years old next year.

☐ A is going to be

☐ B shall be

☐ C is to be

☐ D will be

03. He said, "Look at these black clouds. \_\_\_\_\_."

☐ A It is to rain

☐ B It'll be raining

☐ C It's going to rain

☐ D It'll rain

04. I hope that you \_\_\_\_\_ a good time this evening.

☐ A have

☐ B are having

☐ C will have

☐ D has

05. There \_\_\_\_\_ a basketball match this afternoon.

☐ A will have

☐ B will be

**C** has**D** have

06. We \_\_\_\_\_ to the park if the weather is nice tomorrow.

**A** will go**B** go**C** goes**D** to go

07. Don't be late, Lily. The test \_\_\_\_\_ at 10 a.m.

**A** is starting**B** has started**C** would start**D** starts

08. I don't know if it \_\_\_\_\_ or not tomorrow.

**A** will snow**B** snows**C** has snowed**D** is snowing

09. She has bought some cloth. She \_\_\_\_\_ herself a dress.

**A** makes**B** is going to make**C** would make**D** has made

10. There \_\_\_\_\_ a birthday party for Kevin this Sunday.

**A** shall be**B** will be**C** shall going to be**D** will going to be

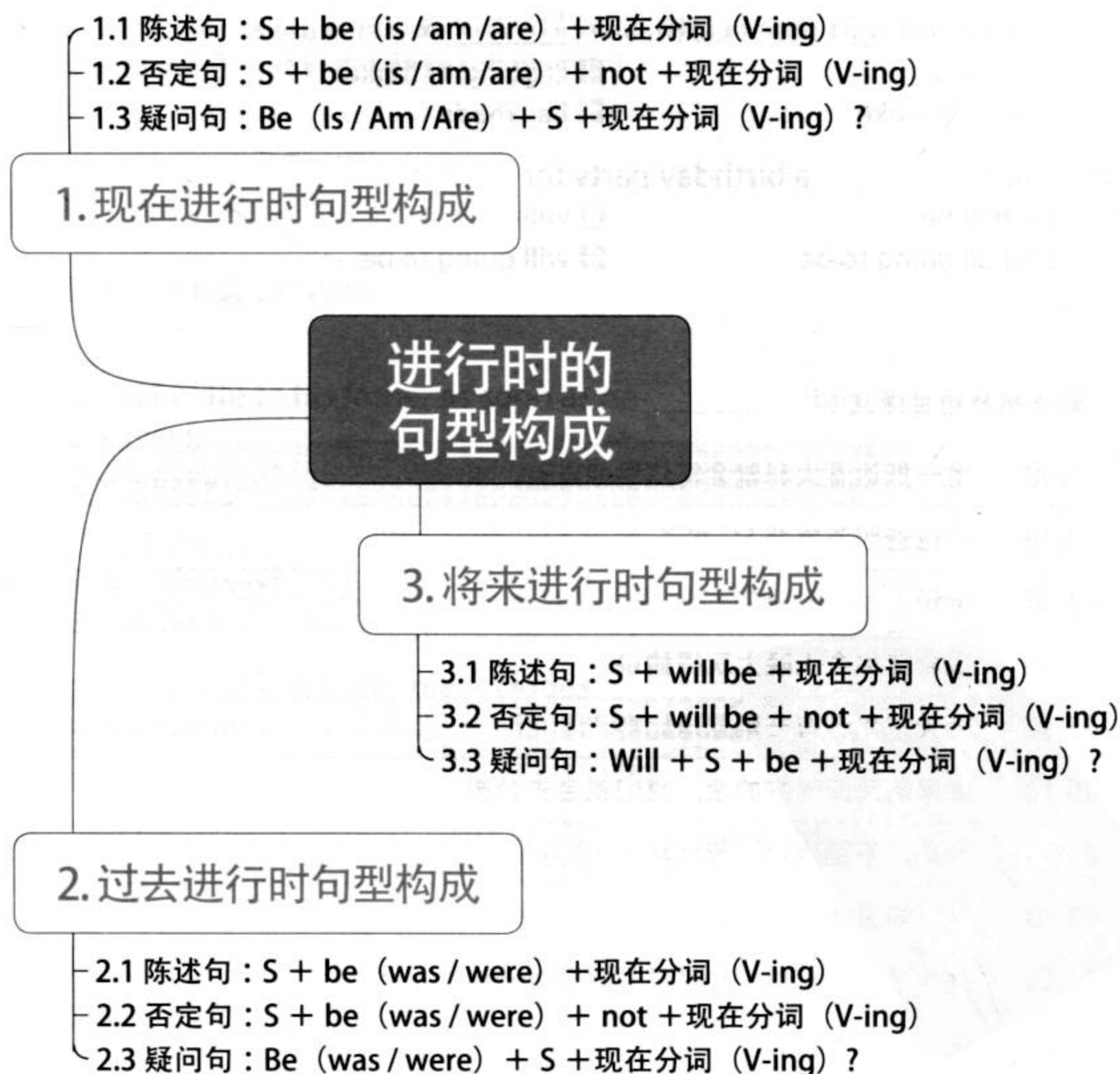
正确答案及题目译文：

01. **B** 他一抵达意大利就会写信给他爸爸。02. **D** 我爸爸明年就要 50 岁了。03. **C** 他说：“看看那些乌云。快要下雨了。”04. **C** 我希望你今天晚上玩得愉快。05. **B** 今天下午会有一场篮球比赛。06. **A** 如果明天天气好的话，我们就会去公园。07. **D** 莉莉，不要迟到。考试早上 10 点钟就会开始。08. **A** 我不知道明天会不会下雪。09. **B** 她买了一些布料。她想要帮自己做一件衣服。10. **B** 这个礼拜天，有一场为凯文举办的派对。



## 04 现在进行时 vs. 过去进行时 vs. 将来进行时

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping



# Part 1 进行时的句型构成

## 1. 现在进行时

1-1. 陈述句型：S + be (is / am / are) + 现在分词 (V-ing)

I am playing piano with my brother now. (我和我哥哥正在一起弹钢琴。)

1-2. 否定句型：S + be (is / am / are) + not + 现在分词 (V-ing)

Tony is totally not listening. (汤尼根本就没在听。)

1-3. 疑问句型：be (is / am / are) + S + 现在分词 (V-ing) ?

Are you reading now? (你在读书吗?)

## 2. 过去进行时

2-1. 一般句型：S + be (was / were) + 现在分词 (V-ing)

She was trying on a piece of new clothes when her phone rang.  
(电话响时候她正在试穿一件新衣服。)

2-2. 否定句型：S + be (was / were) + not + 现在分词 (V-ing)

I was not speeding! (我当时并没有超速!)

2-3. 疑问句型：be (was / were) + S + 现在分词 (V-ing) ?

Were you talking to Tom on the phone at 8 p.m. last night?  
(你昨晚八点是否在跟汤姆打电话?)

## 3. 将来进行时

3-1. 一般句型：S + will be + 现在分词 (V-ing)

If I continue to go out with you, my mother will soon be very pissing off.  
(如果我继续跟你出去，我妈妈很快就会非常生气。)

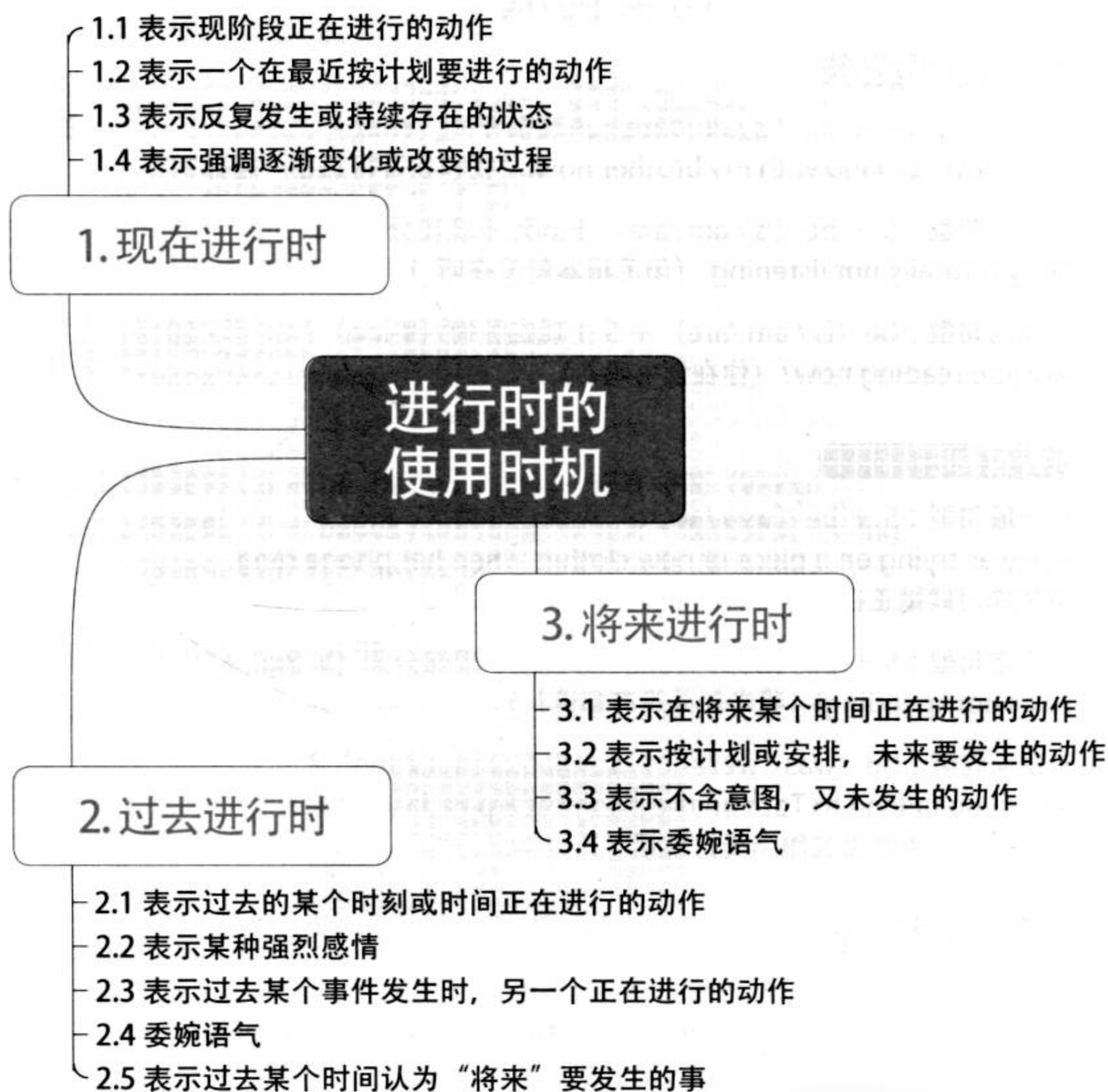
3-2. 否定句型：S + will be + not + 现在分词 (V-ing)

I hope it won't still be raining when I have to go to work.  
(我希望我要上班的时候不要还在下雨。)

3-3. 一般句型：Will + S + be + 现在分词 (V-ing) ?

Will you be using your notebook tomorrow morning?  
(你明天早上还会用你的笔记本电脑吗?)





## Part 2 进行时的使用时机

### 1. 现在进行时

1-1. 表示现阶段正在进行的动作。常与 now, right now, at present, at the moment, for the time being 等时间副词连用，例如：

I am looking for someone to talk with now. (我现在想找个人来说说话。)

1-2. 表示一个在最近按计划要进行的动作。常与一个表示将来的时间副词连用, 这种情况仅限于少量动词, 如 go, come, leave, start, arrive, work, have, stay, play, return 等。

I am coming to pick you up. (我马上就要来接你。)

1-3. 表示反复发生或持续存在的状态。常与 always, constantly, forever 等词连用, 往往带有说话人的主观色彩, 多含抱怨意味。

You are always changing your mind with no reason. (你老是毫无理由地改变主意。)

1-4. 表示强调逐渐变化或改变的过程。常与 get, grow, change, become, turn, go, run, begin 等动词搭配。

My parents are getting old. (我的父母越来越老了。)

## 2. 过去进行时

2-1. 表示过去的某个时刻或时间正在进行的动作。常与表示过去的时间副词 then, at that time, this time yesterday, at six yesterday 等连用。

I was reading a novel this morning. (上午我在看小说。)

2-2. 表示某种强烈感情。常与 always, constantly, forever 等副词连用。

She was always complaining. (她老是抱怨。)

2-3. 表示过去某个事件发生时, 另一个正在进行的动作。此时, 延续性动作作用过去进行时, 瞬间动作作用一般过去时。

I met Ann when I was shopping this morning. (我早上逛街时遇到了安。)

### TIPS!

如果表示的是两个延续性的动作, 都用过去进行时。

Some students were playing football,  
while others were running around the track.

(一些学生在踢足球, 另一些学生在跑步。)

2-4. 过去进行时可以表达委婉语气, 例如:

I was wondering if you can give me a lift. (不知我可否顺便搭你的车。)

2-5. 表示过去某个时间认为“将来”要发生的事。

When his son arrived, the old man is dying.

(当他的儿子抵达的时候, 这位老人已经奄奄一息。)



### 3. 将来进行时

3-1. 表示在将来某个时间正在进行的动作。

At this time tomorrow, I will be sleeping at home.

(明天这个时候我将会在家睡觉。)

3-2. 表示按计划或安排，将来要发生的动作。

We will be spending our summer vacation in Hawaii. (我们将在夏威夷过暑假。)

3-3. 表示不含意图又未发生的动作。

Lucy won't pay this bill. (露西不肯付这笔钱。) → 表意愿

Lucy won't be paying this bill. (不会要求露西来付钱的。) → 单纯谈将来情况

3-4. 表示委婉语气。

Will you be having a cup of coffee? (要来杯咖啡吗?)

## 02 延伸用法，事半功倍！

Learning Plus!

表示状态或感觉的动词，如果指现在的情况的话，一般不用进行时，而要用一般现在时，这样的动词有：love, like, hate, want, hope, need, wish, know, understand, remember, belong, hear, see, seem, have, sound, taste 等，但如果它们的词义改变，也可以用进行时态。

She looks pale. What's wrong with her? (她看起来很苍白。她怎么了么?)

→ look 此为系动词，意为“看起来，显得”。

She is looking for her books. (她在找她的书。)

→ look 在此为实义动词，意为“寻找”。

## 03 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. I was reading the newspaper when the doorbell rang.

我正在看报，突然门铃响了。

02. I'll be taking holidays soon.  
不久后我将在度假了。
03. It's raining outside now.  
现在外面在下雨。
04. We are having a meeting now.  
我们现在正在开会。
05. I was doing my homework while she is listening music.  
我在做作业的时候，她正在听音乐。
06. This time next week I will be lying on the beach.  
下个星期的这个时候我就会躺在沙滩上了。
07. When I got to the top of the mountain, the sun was rising.  
当我到达山顶的时候，太阳正在升起。
08. The train is leaving soon.  
火车马上就要开了。
09. She will be coming home soon.  
她不久后就会回家了。
10. The leaves are turning yellow.  
树叶变黄了。

## 04 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

用所给动词的正确形式填空。

01. I \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) my room now.
02. Jessie \_\_\_\_\_ (do) her homework when I called her last night.
03. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) now? I \_\_\_\_\_ (sing).



04. My father \_\_\_\_\_ (read) newspaper at ten yesterday.  
 05. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) when I went out yesterday.  
 06. David \_\_\_\_\_ (play) chess with his grandfather now.  
 07. He \_\_\_\_\_ (mend) a car now.  
 08. This time next day they \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in the cinema.  
 09. I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a meeting at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon.  
 10. What do you think you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) at this time next year?

正确答案及题目译文：

01. am cleaning	我现在正在打扫我的房间。
02. was doing	我昨晚给杰西打电话的时候她正在做作业。
03. are, doing, am singing	你现在正在干什么？我在唱歌。
04. was reading	我爸爸昨天十点在看报纸。
05. was raining	我昨天出去的时候正在下大雨。
06. is playing	大卫正在和他的祖父下棋。
07. is mending	他正在修车。
08. will be sitting	明天的这个时候他们将坐在电影院里。
09. will be having	我明天下午三点将有一个会要开。
10. will be doing	你认为你明年的这个时候将在干什么呢？

Step 1 先搞懂概念与时态

## 05 现在完成时 vs. 过去完成时 vs. 将来完成时

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！

Grammar Mind Mapping

- 1.1 陈述句：S + has / have + 过去分词 (p.p.)
- 1.2 否定句：S + has / have + not + 过去分词 (p.p.)
- 1.3 疑问句：Has / Have + S + 过去分词 (p.p.) ?

#### 1. 现在完成时

### 完成时的 句型构成

#### 2. 过去完成时

- 2.1 陈述句：S + had + 过去分词 (p.p.)
- 2.2 否定句：S + had + not + 过去分词 (p.p.)
- 2.3 疑问句：Had + S + 过去分词 (p.p.) ?

#### 3. 将来完成时

- 3.1 陈述句：S + shall / will + have + 过去分词 (p.p.)
- 3.2 否定句：S + shall / will + have + not + 过去分词 (p.p.)
- 3.3 疑问句：Shall / Will + S + have + 过去分词 (p.p.) ?



## Part 1 完成时的句型构成

### 1. 现在完成时

1-1. 陈述句型：S + has / have + 过去分词 (p.p.)

I have already finished my homework. (我已经完成了我的作业。)

1-2. 否定句型：S + has / have + not + 过去分词 (p.p.)

Sandy has been a nurse in this hospital for 15 years.

(珊蒂已经在这间医院担任护士长达 15 年了。)

1-3. 疑问句型：Has / Have + S + 过去分词 (p.p.) ?

Have you ever seen Peter in past 3 months?

(过去 3 个月内，你看见过彼得吗？)

### 2. 过去完成时

2-1. 陈述句型：S + had + 过去分词 (p.p.)

This proposal had been delivered by Eva before Aaron finished it.

(这个计划在艾伦完成以前，伊娃就已经提交出去了。)

2-2. 否定句型：S + had + not + 过去分词 (p.p.)

I had not finished my work when he visited me last week.

(上周他来拜访我以前，我还没有完成工作。)

2-3. 疑问句型：Had + S + 过去分词 (p.p.) ?

Had you ever been to a blind date before you married? (你结婚以前曾经参加相亲吗？)

### 3. 将来完成时

3-1. 陈述句型：S + shall / will + have + 过去分词 (p.p.)

They will have finished the meeting by now. (他们现在应该已经开完会了。)

3-2. 否定句型：S + shall / will + have + not + 过去分词 (p.p.)

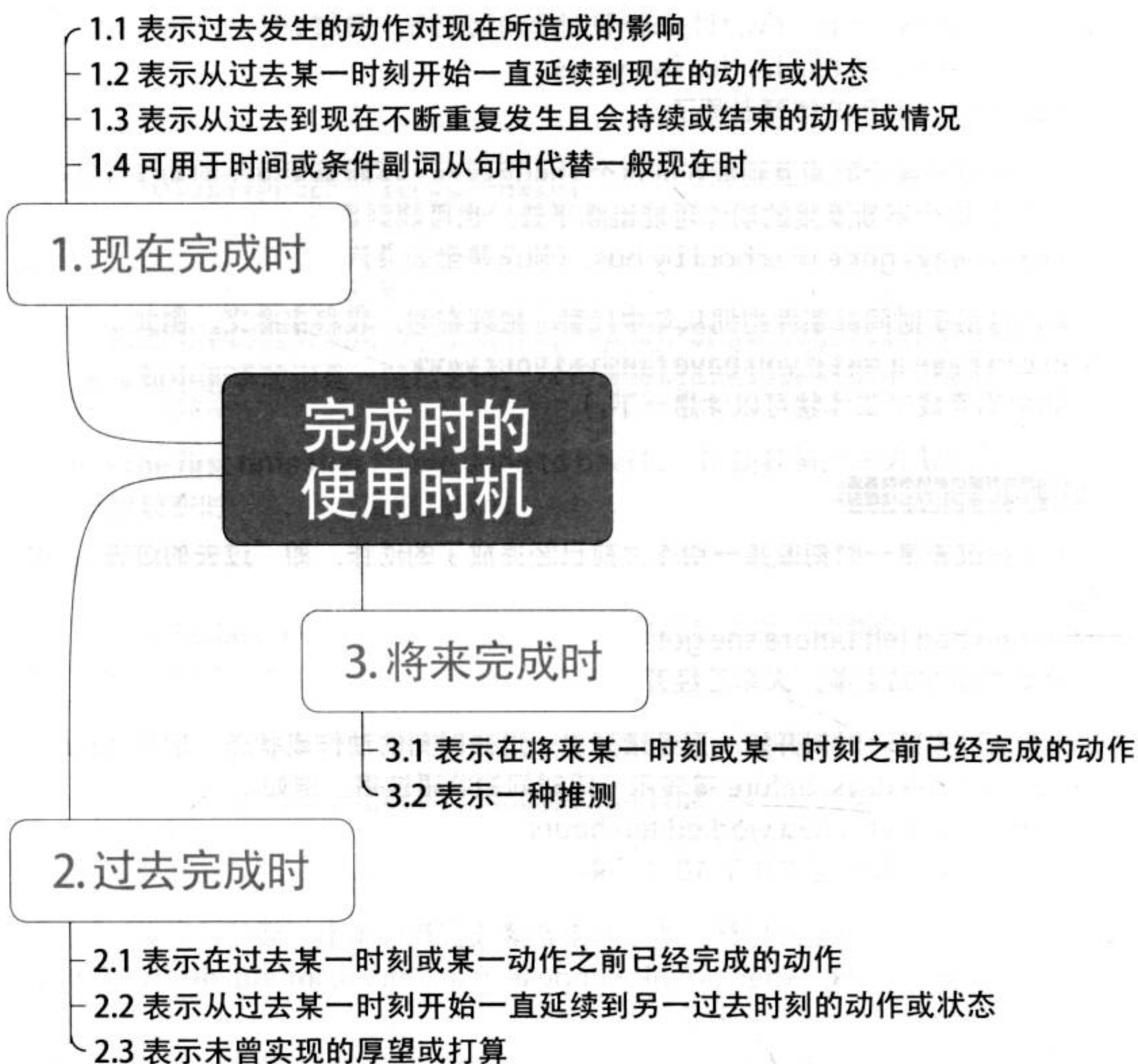
We will have not made 10 apple pies by the end of today.

(我们在今天结束之前不能做完 10 个苹果派。)

3-3. 疑问句型：Shall / Will + S + have + 过去分词 (p.p.) ?

Will they have already left by the time we get there?

(我们到的时候，他们会不会已经离开了？)



## Part 2 完成时的使用时机？

### 1. 现在完成时

1-1 表示过去发生的动作对现在所造成的影响。常与 just, already, yet, recently, before, twice, three times 等时间副词连用，例如：

Luckily, I have seen the questions before.

(很幸运，我之前就已经看过这些问题。)



1-2 表示从过去某一时刻开始一直延续到现在的动作或状态，常与“since + 时间点”、“for + 时间段”，及 how long, (ever) since, ever, before, so far, in the last / past few years, up to now, till now 等时间副词连用。例如：

She has been a PE teacher for five years.

(她已经当了五年的体育老师了。)

1-3 表示从过去某个时间直到现在的这个时间范围内，不断重复发生的动作或情况，并且这个不断重复的动作可能继续下去，也可能到现在就结束。

He has always gone to school by bus. (他总是坐公共汽车上学。)

1-4 有时可用于时间或条件副词从句中代替一般现在时，表将来意义。例如：

You can have a rest if you have finished your work.

(如果你完成了工作就可以休息一下。)

## 2. 过去完成时

2-1 表示在过去某一时刻或某一动作之前已经完成了的动作，即“过去的过去”。例如：

The train had left before she got to the station.

(在她抵达车站之前，火车已经开走了。)

2-2 表示从过去某一时刻开始一直延续到另一过去时刻的动作或状态。常与 how long, for three days, before 等表示一段时间的状语连用。例如：

By twelve o'clock, I had worked ten hours.

(到 12 点钟时我已经工作了 10 个小时。)

2-3 表示未曾实现的希望或打算，即“本来希望或打算做某事（但却没有做）”。常与 wish, hope, want, expect, think, suppose, plan, mean, intend, desire 等动词连用，例如：

I had meant to take a good holiday this year, but I wasn't able to get away from this job.

(本来打算今年好好度假的，但我还是没办法从工作中脱身。)

## 3. 将来完成时

3-1 表示在将来某一时刻或某一时刻之前已经完成的动作，往往对将来某一时间产生影响，常与表示将来的时间副词及条件或时间副词从句连用。例如：

They will have arrived by now. (她们现在应该已经到了。)

If you come at six o'clock, I shall not yet have finished dinner.

(你若六点钟可以到，我应该还没吃完晚饭。)

When we get there, he will have gone to work.

(我们到那里时，他应该已经去上班了。)

3-2 表示一种推测，主语要用第二、第三人称。例如：

You will have finished your homework by now. (这时候你应该已经完成了你的作业。)

She will have watched this film already. (她恐怕已经看过这场电影了。)

## 02 延伸用法，事半功倍！

Learning Plus!

### 1. 主句与从句中完成时的运用：

如果主句中的谓语动词为一般现在时，从句中谓语动词就用现在完成时；如果主句中谓语动词是一般过去时，从句谓语动词用过去完成时。例如：

It is the first time that I have gone to beach. (这是我第一次去海边。)

一般现在时

现在完成时

This is the last bread that we have left. (这是我们剩下的最后一个面包。)

一般现在时

现在完成时

That was the most expensive clothes that I had ever bought.

一般过去时

过去完成时

(这是我买过最贵的衣服。)

### 2. 过去完成时常用于以下固定句型：

(a) hardly, scarcely, barely + 过去完成时 + when + 一般过去时

Hardly had I got on the bus when it started to move.

(公共汽车开车前，我差一点就赶不上了。)

(b) no sooner + 过去完成时 + than + 一般过去时

No sooner had I got in the office than the manager started to yell at me.

(我一到办公室，经理就开始对我吼叫。)

(c) by (the end of) + 过去时间副词 → 主语的谓语动词用过去完成时

The experiment had been finished by 4 o'clock yesterday afternoon.

(这个实验在昨天下午四点结束。)



## 03 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. I have just received a letter from my mother.  
我正好收到一封来自我妈妈的信。

---

02. As soon as the sun had set we returned to our hotel.  
太阳一下山我们就回到了旅馆。

---

03. I had not understood the problem until she explained it.  
直到她给我解释我才明白问题出在哪。

---

04. They have seen the film several times.  
这部电影她们已经看了好几次。

---

05. I have lived here for ten years.  
我已经在这里住了十年了。

---

06. Next Monday, I shall have been in this company for a year.  
到下周一，我到这家公司就满一年了。

---

07. He will have gone back to Paris.  
他想必已经回巴黎去了。

---

08. I had meant to go to your party, but something happened.  
我本打算去你的派对，但突然发生了一点事。

## 04 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出题目中最适合的选项。

01. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ than the accident happened.  
☐ A he had gone                      ☐ B had he gone  
☐ C his going                        ☐ D he went.
02. We have been friends since \_\_\_\_\_.

- A** five year                      **B** five years  
**C** five years ago                **D** five years before
03. You \_\_\_\_\_ that question three times.  
**A** already asked                **B** have already asked  
**C** already have asked        **D** asked already
04. All the machines \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of the following week.  
**A** were repaired                **B** will be repaired  
**C** have been repaired        **D** will have been repaired
05. His grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ for thirty years.  
**A** died                              **B** was dead  
**C** has been dead                **D** has died
06. "Are Alice and Tom still living in London?"  
"No, they \_\_\_\_\_ to New York."  
**A** are just moved                **B** have just moved  
**C** had just moved               **D** will just move
07. I lost the dictionary I \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A** have bought                   **B** bought  
**C** had bought                   **D** had been bought
08. I \_\_\_\_\_ 800 English words by the time I was ten.  
**A** learned                        **B** was learning  
**C** had learned                   **D** learnt

正确答案及题目译文：

01. **B** 意外一发生他就不见了。
02. **C** 我们从五年前就是朋友了。
03. **B** 这个问题你已经问过三次了。
04. **D** 全部的机器在接下来这个礼拜都会修好。
05. **C** 他的祖父已经去世 30 年了。
06. **B** “爱丽丝跟汤姆还住在伦敦吗？” “不，他们已经搬到纽约去了。”
07. **C** 我买的那本字典不见了。
08. **C** 我 10 岁的时候就已经学会了 800 个英语单词。



## 06 完成进行时 (现在 vs. 过去 vs. 将来)

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping

- 1.1 基本句：S + has / have + been + V-ing
- 1.2 否定句：S + has / have + been + not + V-ing
- 1.3 疑问句：Has / Have + S + been + V-ing ?

#### 1. 现在完成进行时

### 完成进行时的 句型构成

#### 2. 过去完成进行时

- 2.1 基本句：S + had been + V-ing
- 2.2 否定句：S + had been + not + V-ing
- 2.3 疑问句：Had + S + been + V-ing ?

#### 3. 将来完成进行时

- 3.1 基本句：S + will / shall + have been + V-ing
- 3.2 否定句：S + will / shall + not + have been + V-ing
- 3.3 疑问句：Will / Shall + S + have been + V-ing ?

# Part 1 完成时的句型构成

## 1. 现在完成进行时

1-1. 基本句型：S + has / have + been + V-ing

The Smith Family has been making sports car for 200 years.

(史密斯家族有 200 年制作跑车的历史。)

1-2. 否定句型：S + has / have + been + not + V-ing

I have been not dancing for three months. (我已经三个月不跳舞了。)

1-3. 疑问句型：Has / Have + S + been + V-ing ?

Has Enzo been learning English since three years ago?

(恩佐从三年前就开始学英语了吗?)

## 2. 过去完成进行时

2-1. 基本句型：S + had been + V-ing

Eli had been playing games before you got home.

(伊莱在你回家之前一直都在玩游戏。)

2-2. 否定句型：S + had been + not + V-ing

Amy had been not working for ten years before I met her.

(艾米在我遇到她的十年前就没在工作了。)

2-3. 疑问句型：Had + S + been + V-ing ?

Had your father been driving all day before he went to sleep?

(你爸爸在睡觉之前开了一整天的车吗?)

## 3. 将来完成进行时

3-1. 基本句型：S + will / shall + have been + V-ing

When Mrs. Wang retires next year, she will have been teaching for 40 years.

(当王太太下个月退休时，她就已经教书教了四十年。)

3-2. 否定句型：S + will / shall + not + have been + V-ing

I won't have been waiting for you since you keep talking to me like this.

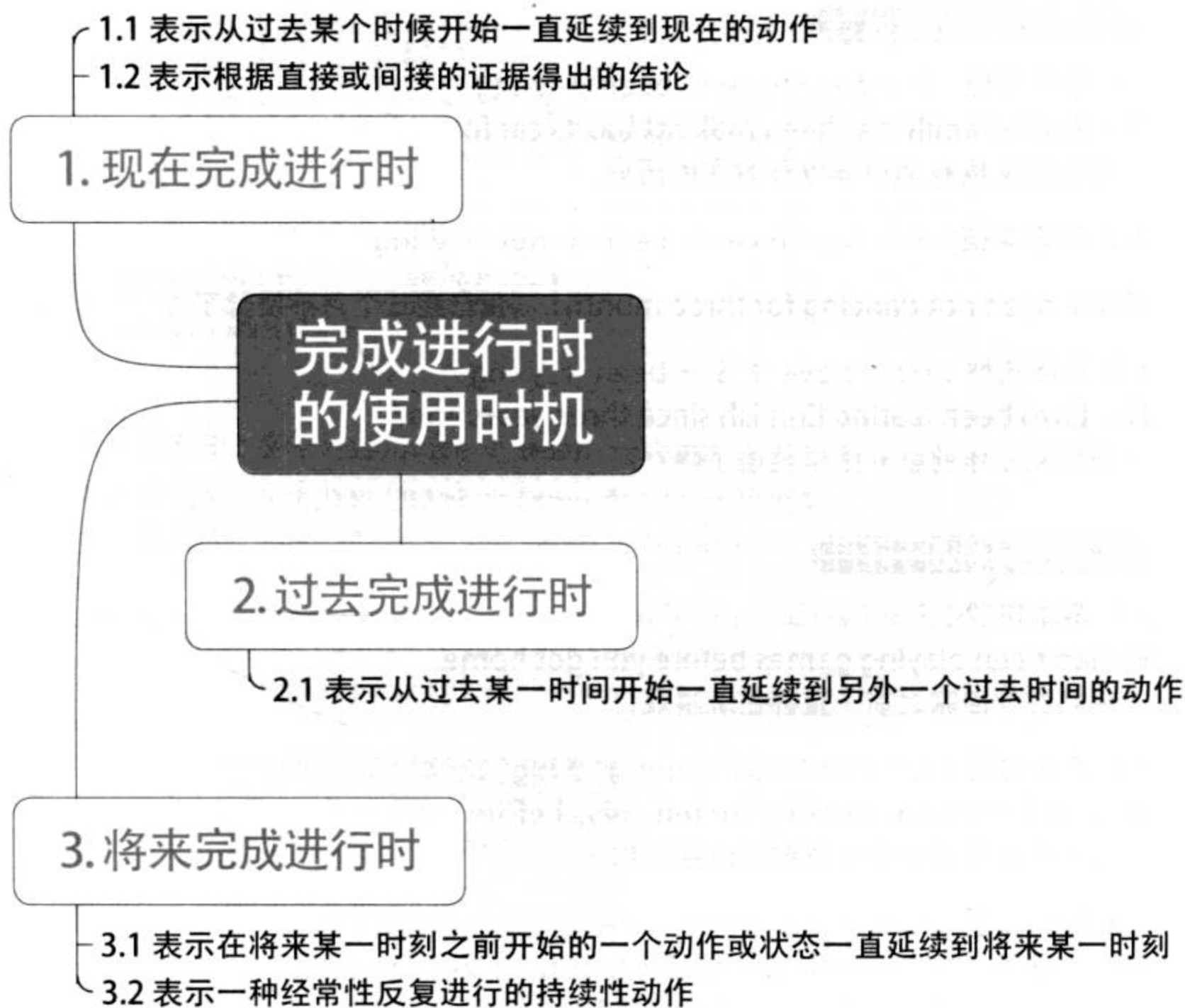
(如果你继续这样对我说话，我就不会一直等着你的。)

3-3. 疑问句型：Will / Shall + S + have been + V-ing ?

When Leo goes out tonight, it will have been raining.

(当里奥今天晚上出门的时候，外头应该正下着雨。)





## Part 2 完成时的使用时机？

完成进行时是完成时的强调形式，分为现在完成进行时、过去完成进行时及将来完成进行时。

现在完成进行时表示从过去某个时候开始一直延续到现在的动作，强调现在仍然在进行，并还可能继续延续下去；

过去完成进行时表示从过去某一时间开始一直延续到另外一个过去时间的动作，这个动作在当时仍在进行并可能继续延续下去；

未来完成进行时表示在未来某一时间以前已经完成，或一直持续的动作。

### 1. 现在完成进行时

1-1 表示从过去某个时候开始一直延续到现在的动作。强调现在依然在进行，并还可能继续延续下去。例如：

I have been looking for my lost book for two days, but I still haven't found it.  
(我已经找我弄丢的书找了两天了，但我仍然没有找到。)

1-2 表示根据直接或间接的证据得出的结论。

Her eyes are red. She has been crying. (她眼睛红了。她一直在哭。)

### 2. 过去完成进行时

2-1 表示从过去某一时间开始一直延续到另外一个过去时间的动作，这个动作在当时仍在进行并可能继续延续下去，例如：

We had been waiting for her before she came in.  
(在她进来之前，我们一直在等她。)

### 3. 未来完成进行时

3-1 表示在将来某一时刻之前开始的一个动作或状态一直延续到将来某一时刻，常与一个以 by 开头的时间短语连用。例如：

By the end of this month, she will have been learning piano for half a year.  
(到这个月底，她就学钢琴半年了。)

3-2 表示一种经常性反复进行的持续性动作。例如：

By the end of this month, he will have been climbing mountains for ten years.  
(到了这个月底他的登山资历就满 10 年了。)

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. We have been living here since 2000.

从 2000 年起我们就住在这里了。

02. He was out of breath. He had been running.

他气喘吁吁。他一直在跑着。



03. I heard you had been looking for me.

我听说你一直在找我。

---

04. I have been looking forward to meeting you.

我一直盼望着见到你。

---

05. Without doubt you have been working very hard.

毫无疑问，你工作一向非常努力。

---

06. By the end of this year, she will have been teaching for five years.

到今年年底，她就当了五年老师了。

---

07. On December we will have living here for two years.

到12月1日，我们住在这儿就满两年了。

---

08. She had been suffering from a bad cold when she took the exam.

她在考试之前一直患重感冒。

---

09. By the time you arrive tomorrow, she will have been typing for hours.

到明天你抵达的时候，她将已经打了数小时的字。

---

10. He had been mentioning your name to me.

他总是向我提起你的名字。

---

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请填入正确时态的动词。

01. We \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for her for two hours.

02. They \_\_\_\_\_ (build) the bridge for six months.

03. He \_\_\_\_\_ (study) abroad for one year.

04. By the end of this month, I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) here for three months.

05. He \_\_\_\_\_ (prepare) his exam till one o'clock this morning.

06. Up to that time he \_\_\_\_\_ (translate) those books.
07. I wanted to know what \_\_\_\_\_ (go) on.
08. She \_\_\_\_\_ (have) treatment all her life.
09. By this time next year, we \_\_\_\_\_ (do) business with each other for 20 years.
10. He gave up smoking last year. He \_\_\_\_\_ (smoke) for thirty years.

正确答案及题目译文：

01. have been waiting	我们已经等了她两个小时了。
02. have been building	他们建这桥已经建了六个月了。
03. has been studying	他已经在国外学习一年了。
04. will have been working	到这个月月底我就已经在这工作三个月了。
05. had been preparing	他直到凌晨一点还一直在准备他的考试。
06. had been translating	直到那个时候他还在翻译那些书。
07. had been going	我想知道一直在发生什么事。
08. will have been having	她将终身接受治疗。
09. will have been doing	到明年这时候，我们的业务往来就满 20 年了。
10. had been smoking	他去年戒了烟，他已经抽了 30 年了。



Step 2 了解英语中关键的关键—单词

## 07 形容词 (含比较级 & 最高级)

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping

- 1.1 定语：置于修饰词之前
- 1.2 动词补语：置于系动词之后
- 1.3 宾语补语：修饰句中宾语。
- 1.4 副词从句：成为形容词短语从句，修饰主句。

#### 1.使用时机及用法

### 形容词用法

#### 2.使用规则及要点

- 2.1 修饰不定代词时置于其后
- 2.2 两个以上的形容词的顺序
- 2.3 “The + 形容词” 用来表示特定的人 / 物
- 2.4 两个以上形容词当定语置于最后
- 2.5 修饰长宽高深及年龄置于名词之后

### Part 1 形容词的用法

形容词主要用来修饰名词或不定代词，表示人或事物的性质、状态和特征的词。形容词在句中作定语、补语及修饰从句等。例如：

She is a pretty girl. (她是一个漂亮的女孩。)

He looks very happy. (他看起来很开心。)

## 1. 使用时机及用法

1-1. 定语：一般放在所修饰词的前面。

Provence is a romantic city. (普罗旺斯是一座浪漫的城市。)

1-2. 动词补语：放在系动词后面。

The trees turn green in spring. (树叶在春天变绿。)

1-3. 宾语补语：修饰句中宾语。

We must keep the classroom clean. (我们应该保持教室干净。)

1-4. 副词从句：成为形容词短语从句，修饰主句。

He arrived home, hungry and tired. (他又累又饿地回到家里。)

## 2. 使用规则及要点

2-1. 修饰不定代词时置于其后：

当形容词修饰由 some-, any-, no-, every- 这些字首所构成的不定代词时，形容词要放在这些不定代词之后。例如：

There must be something wrong with my computer. (我的电脑出了点问题。)

2-2. 两个以上的形容词的顺序：

当一个句子中，有两个以上的形容词用来修饰同一个名词时，其先后顺序为：(冠词 + 数量 + 性质 + 大小 + 形状 + 新旧 + 颜色 + 国籍) + 名词。可背诵以下的例句辅助记忆：

I have a beautiful little new white Chinese wooden table. (我有一张新的白色中式木桌，漂亮且小巧。)



### 2-3. “The + 形容词” 用来表示特定的人 / 物：

用 “The + 形容词” 可用来表示特定的人或物，例如：the rich 富人、the young 年轻人、the old 老人等。后面须接复数动词。

We should look after the old and love the young. (我们应该尊老爱幼。)

### 2-4. 两个以上形容词当定语置于最后：

用 and 或 or 连接起来的两个形容词做定语时，一般把它们放在被修饰的名词后面，以进一步产生修饰作用。

You can take any dress, pink or blue. (你可以拿这两件裙子中的任何一条，粉红色或蓝色的都行。)

### 2-5. 修饰长宽高深及年龄置于名词之后：

表示长、宽、高、深及年龄的形容词，应放在相应的名词之后。

The river is about two hundred meters long. (这条河大约两百米长。)

## Part 2 形容词的比较级、最高级

### 1. 规则变化

#### 1-1. 单音节词在字尾加 -er / -est：

单音节形容词在转变为比较级和最高级时，规则是在字尾加 -er 和 -est。例如：clean → cleaner → cleanest。

#### 1-2. 单音节词以 -e 结尾在字尾加 -r / -st：

以 -e 结尾的单音节形容词，转变为比较级和最高级时，规则是在字尾加 -r 和 -st。例如：wide → wider → widest。

#### 1-3. 双音节词以 -y, -er, -ow, -ble 结尾在字尾加 -er / -est：

少数以 -y, -er, -ow, -ble 结尾的双音节形容词，在转变为比较级和最高级时，规则是在字尾加 -er 和 -est。例如：slow → slower → slowest。

#### 1-4. 以 -y 结尾的形容词，去掉字尾 -y 加 -ier / -iest：

以 -y 结尾，但 -y 前是辅音字母的形容词的比较级和最高级是把 -y 去掉，加上 -ier 和 -iest。例如：lonely → lonelier → loneliest。

#### 1-5. 形容词字尾“辅元辅”重复字尾再加 -er：

当形容词或其字尾出现“辅音+元音+辅音”现象，也就是最后三个字母和音标的排列是“辅元辅”，在转变为比较级和最高级时，规则是要重复字尾，再加 -er。

例如：big → bigger → biggest。

- 1.1 单音节词在字尾加 -er / -est
- 1.2 单音节词以 -e 结尾在字尾加 -r / -st
- 1.3 双音节词以 -y, -er, -ow, -ble 结尾字尾加 -er / -est
- 1.4 以 -y 结尾的形容词, 去掉字尾 -y 加 -ier / -iest
- 1.5 形容词字尾“辅元辅”重复字尾再加 -er
- 1.6 三音节词和多音节词, 以 more / most 修饰

### 1. 规则变化

## 形容词的 比较级、最高级

### 2. 不规则变化

good / well → better → best

### 3. 比较级与最高级用法

- 3.1 两个人或两种事物比较时, 用比较级
- 3.2 三个或以上的人事物比较, 其中有一个超过其他几个时, 用最高级
- 3.3 表示双方程度相等时 → as...as... / not so...as
- 3.4 越来越…… → the + 比较级, the + 比较级
- 3.5 程度越来越强 → 比较级 + and + 比较级
- 3.6 most + 形容词原形 → 极 / 很 / 非常……
- 3.7 副词 + 比较级 → 强调
- 3.8 两者中哪一个更…… → which / who + 比较级, ...or...?
- 3.9 最……之一 → one of + the + 最高级



## 1-6. 三音节词和多音节词，以 more / most 修饰：

三个音节以上的形容词，则在其前加 more / most，以形成比较级及最高级。另外注意，more / most 后的形容词必须是原级。例如：beautiful → more beautiful → most beautiful。

## 2. 不规则变化

原级	比较级	最高级
good / well	better	best
many / much	more	most
bad / ill	worse	worst
old	older / elder	oldest / eldest
little	less	least
far	farther / further	farthest / furthest
late	later / latter	last / latest

## 3. 比较级与最高级用法

## 3-1. 两个人或两种事物比较时，用比较级。

句型为“比较级 + than...” 例如：

Bob is taller than Jack. (鲍勃比杰克高。)

## 3-2. 三个或三个以上的人或事物比较，其中有一个在某一方面超过其他几个时，用最高级。

句型为“the + 最高级 + ...in / of...”。例如：

Bob is the tallest in his class. (鲍勃是他班上最高的。)

## 3-3. 表示双方程度相等时，用“...as + 形容词原级 + as...”句型，可译为“...和...一样”；表示双方程度不相等时，用“...not so / as + 形容词原级 + as...”句型，可译为“...和...不一样”或“...不如...”，例如：

This box is as big as mine. (这个盒子和我的一样大。)

He runs not so fast as me. (他跑得没我快。)

## 3-4. 表示“越来越……”可用“The + 形容词比较级……, the + 形容词比较级”。

例如：The more you study, the more you know. (你学习的越多，你就知道的越多。)

3-5. 表示程度越来越强, 用“比较级 + and + 比较级”句型, 可译为“越来越……”。例如:

It is getting hotter and hotter. (天气变得越来越热。)

3-6. most 同形容词连用, 前面不加 the, 可表示极……, 很……, 非常……, 十分……。例如:

It's most dangerous to be here. (在这儿实在很危险。)

3-7. 比较级前可以加副词修饰, 以加强程度。例如: much, far, still, even, a lot, a little, a bit 等等。例如:

The rope is much longer than that one. (这条绳比那条绳长很多。)

3-8. 两者之间选择“哪一个更……”时, 用句型“Which / Who + is + 比较级, ...or...?” 例如:

Which is bigger, the sun or the moon? (太阳和月亮, 哪一个更大?)

3-9. 表示“最……之一”时, 用“one of + the + 最高级”。例如:

The light bulb is one of the most helpful inventions. (电灯泡是最有用的发明之一。)

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. The sunset was a beautiful sight.

日落是一种美丽的景象。

02. He is the happiest man on earth.

他是地球上最快乐的人。

03. The film is boring.

那个电影很枯燥。

04. It's an utter mystery.

这完全是个迷。

05. She looked embarrassed.

她好像很尴尬。

06. He is one of the greatest composers in the world.

他是世界上最伟大的作曲家之一。



07. It's foolish of her to go alone.  
她单独出去太傻了。
- 
08. The black one is the more expensive of the two boxes.  
黑色的是这两个盒子当中最贵的。
- 
09. The more careful you are, the fewer mistakes you will make.  
你越仔细，犯的错误越少。
- 
10. Mountain climbing is one of the most dangerous sports.  
爬山是最危险的运动之一。

08. The black one is the more expensive of the two boxes.  
黑色的是这两个盒子当中最贵的。

09. The more careful you are, the fewer mistakes you will make.  
你越仔细，犯的错误越少。

10. Mountain climbing is one of the most dangerous sports.  
爬山是最危險的運動之一。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

## Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. The writer died before finishing his \_\_\_\_\_ book.  
☐ A late ☐ B later  
☐ C last ☐ D latest.
02. She got \_\_\_\_\_ that she couldn't dance anymore.  
☐ A very angrily ☐ B too angrily  
☐ C too angry ☐ D so angry
03. The sweater is very beautiful, but it's \_\_\_\_\_ small.  
☐ A too much ☐ B much too  
☐ C many ☐ D more
04. She looks very \_\_\_\_\_. I think she needs rest.  
☐ A tired ☐ B hard  
☐ C well ☐ D hardly.
05. Lots of visitors come to visit Hamburg because she's \_\_\_\_\_ city.  
☐ A very a beautiful ☐ B quite a beautiful  
☐ C so a beautiful ☐ D a quite beautiful
06. - Which is \_\_\_\_\_, the sun, the moon or the earth?  
 - Of course the moon.

02. She got \_\_\_\_\_ that she couldn't dance anymore.
- A** very angrily                      **B** too angrily
- C** too angry                         **D** so angry

03. The sweater is very beautiful, but it's \_\_\_\_\_ small.  
A too much                      B much too  
C many                          D more

04. She looks very \_\_\_\_\_. I think she needs rest.  
**A** tired **B** hard  
**C** well **D** hardly.

05. Lots of visitors come to visit Hamburg because she's \_\_\_\_\_ city.
- A very a beautiful                      B quite a beautiful
- C so a beautiful                         D a quite beautiful

06. - Which is \_\_\_\_\_, the sun, the moon or the earth?  
- Of course the moon.

- A** small                      **B** smaller  
**C** smallest                  **D** the smallest
07. She isn't so \_\_\_\_\_ at math as you are.  
**A** well                        **B** good  
**C** better                      **D** best
08. I have \_\_\_\_\_ to do today.  
**A** anything important      **B** something important  
**C** important nothing      **D** important something
09. Mary writes \_\_\_\_\_ of the three.  
**A** better                      **B** best  
**C** good                       **D** well
10. My \_\_\_\_\_ brother is \_\_\_\_\_ than I.  
**A** elder, three years older   **B** older, older  
**C** older, three years elder   **D** elder, elder

正确答案及题目译文：

01. **C** 这位作者在完成他最新的作品之前就过世了。
02. **D** 她太生气了，以致于无法再跳舞。
03. **B** 这件毛衣很漂亮，但是真的太小了。
04. **A** 她看起来非常累。我想她需要好好休息。
05. **B** 很多游客都来游览汉堡，因为它真的是一个非常美丽的城市。
06. **D** 哪一个是最小的，太阳、月亮还是地球？当然是月亮。
07. **B** 她不像你数学那么好。
08. **B** 我今天有些重要的事要处理。
09. **B** 玛丽在这三个人之中写作写得最好。
10. **A** 我的哥哥比我年长三岁。

## 08 副词 (含比较级 & 最高级)

### 01 图解语法, 一看就会!

Grammar Mind Mapping

- 1.1 修饰形容词→置于前方
- 1.2 修饰动词用→置于前方
- 1.3 修饰副词用→置于前方
- 1.4 修饰介词短语用→置于前方
- 1.5 使用 enough 修饰形容词或其他副词时→置于后方
- 1.6 频率副词→行为动词前, 使役动词、助动词或 be 动词之后
- 1.7 副词排序: 先地点再时间
- 1.8 某些副词有两种形式, 一种与形容词同形, 一种以 -ly 结尾, 字义不同

#### 1. 使用时机及用法

### 副词用法

#### 2. 副词的比较级与最高级

- 2.1 同级副词的比较→as + 原级 + as
- 2.2 比较级副词的比较→副词比较级 + than
- 2.3 最高级副词的比较→同形容词用法但不加 the
- 2.4 副词的比较级与最高级规则变化→同形容词
- 2.5 副词的比较级与最高级常见之不规则变化→同形容词



副词主要用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词或全句，用来说明时间、地点、程度、方式等概念的词。副词在句中主要作状语。副词可以分为时间副词、地点副词、方式副词、程度副词、频率副词等。

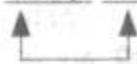
She speaks English quite well. (她英语说得相当好。)

They live frugally. (她们生活很节俭。)

### 1. 使用时机及用法

1-1. 置于形容词前方，修饰形容词用。例如：

He works very hard. (他工作很努力。)



1-2. 置于动词前方，修饰动词用。例如：

I always like to dance by myself. (我总是喜欢一个人跳舞。)



1-3. 置于副词前方，修饰副词用。例如：

He plays piano quite well. (他钢琴弹得很好。)



1-4. 置于介词短语前方，修饰介词短语用。例如：

Danny was absolutely out of control last night. (丹尼昨晚彻底地失控了。)



1-5. 使用 enough 修饰形容词或其他副词时，置于被修饰词后方。例如：

The boy isn't old enough to enter the night club. (这个男孩年龄不够大，还不能进夜店。)



1-6. 频率副词，例如：usually, always, often, never 等，一般放在行为动词前，或是使役动词、助动词或 be 动词之后。例如：

I always get up late. (我经常起得晚。)



You can always call me anytime. (你随时都可以打电话给我。)



1-7. 句中同时出现时间、地点的副词时，先地点再时间。

He arrived here yesterday. (他昨天抵达这里。)

地点 时间

1-8. 某些副词形式相似，但要注意，两种形式的字义不同。例如：

close 接近地 ↔ closely 仔细地，密切地

wide 广阔地，充分地 ↔ widely 广泛地

## 2. 副词的比较级、最高级

副词和形容词一样有比较级和最高级。

2-1. 同级副词的比较 → as + 原级 + as :

My mother drives as fast as my father (does). (我妈车开得跟我爸一样快。)



2-2. 比较级副词的比较 → 副词比较级 + than :

Peter sings better than John. (彼得歌唱得比约翰好。)



2-3. 最高级副词的比较 → 同形容词用法但不加 the :

Who runs (the) fastest in your class? (你们班谁跑得最快?)



**2-4. 副词的比较级与最高级规则变化：**

同形容词，单音节词在字尾加 -er / -est、以 -y 结尾的去掉字尾 -y 加 -ier / -iest 等。

(速度) 快地：fast → faster → fastest

(时间) 快地：soon → sooner → soonest

(声音) 大地：loud → louder → loudest

**2-5. 副词的比较级与最高级常见之不规则变化：**

(程度) 良好地：well → better → best

(程度) 不好地：badly → worse → worst

(距离) 远地：far → farther → farthest

(时间) 迟地：late → later → last

(数量、程度) 多地：much → more → most

(数量、程度) 少地：little → less → least

(程度) 糟糕地：poorly → worse → worst

(程度) 邪恶地：ill → worse → worst

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. He knew London very well.

他对伦敦很熟悉。

02. You need to form the habit of reading carefully.

你需要养成仔细阅读的习惯。

03. Please listen to me carefully.

请认真听我说。

04. Her pronunciation is very good.

她的发音很棒。

05. He didn't study hard enough.

他学习不够刻苦。

06. Tom looked at me suspiciously.

汤姆怀疑地看着我。



07. I sometimes stay up all night.

我有时会熬夜。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请填入正确时态的副词。

01. My purse was stolen on the bus yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_ (Fortunate), there was no money in it.
02. He put on his coat and went out \_\_\_\_\_ (quick).
03. It's snowing hard. You must drive \_\_\_\_\_ (careful).
04. I used to smoke \_\_\_\_\_ (heavy) but I give it up three years ago.
05. What have you been doing \_\_\_\_\_ (late)?
06. He thinks \_\_\_\_\_ (high) of my opinion.
07. He is \_\_\_\_\_ (strong) enough to carry the heavy box.
08. These oranges taste \_\_\_\_\_ (good).

正确答案及题目译文：

01. Fortunately	我钱包昨天在公共汽车上被偷了，幸运的是里面没有钱。
02. quickly	他穿上衣服，然后很快地出门了。
03. carefully	雪下得很大，你应该小心驾驶。
04. heavily	我以前抽烟抽得很凶，但我三年前戒掉了。
05. lately	你最近在干什么？
06. highly	他对我的想法评价很高。
07. strong	他壮得足以提起那个重箱子。
08. good	这些橘子很美味。

Step 2 了解英语中关键的关键——单词

## 09 动词短语 (不可分离 vs. 可分离)

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping

09 动词短语 (不可分离 vs. 可分离)

1.1 句型结构：(不及物) 动词+介词+宾语

1.2 常见动词短语：look after, look for, ask for...

#### 1. 不可分离动词短语

### 动词短语

#### 2. 可分离动词短语

2.1 句型结构

2.1.1 (及物) 动词+宾语+副词

2.1.2 (及物) 动词+副词+宾语

2.2 副词改变原动词字义

2.3 常见动词短语：give up, find out, think over...

2.4 名词放在副词之前或之后

2.5 人称代名词、反身代词放副词之前

所谓的动词短语，是指由动词加上介词 / 副词所组成的短语。其短语意义有时与原先单独动词的字义不同，并且有多种字义。英语中的动词短语依照结构分为两种：不可分离的动词短语（动词+介词），及可分离的动词短语（动词+副词）。

### 1. 不可分离动词短语

#### 1-1. 句型结构：（不及物）动词+介词+宾语

不可分离动词短语中，常常是不及物动词连接介词，宾语必须接在后面。

#### 1-2. 常见的此类动词短语有 look after, look for, ask for, care about, laugh at, hear of 等，所组成的动词短语字义通常不变。

Don't laugh at others. (不要嘲笑别人。)

They didn't look after the children properly. (她们没有正确地照顾孩子们。)

### 2. 可分离动词短语

#### 2-1. 句型结构：

a) (及物) 动词+宾语+副词

b) (及物) 动词+副词+宾语

可分离动词短语是及物动词与副词可以被分开，并可以在中间加入宾语，也可以把宾语放在副词后面。

#### 2-2. 副词改变原动词字义：

可分离动词短语中的副词可置于动词后修饰动词，使得动词改变原本的意思，而产生新的字义。

#### 2-3. 此类常见的动词短语有：

give up, find out, think over, pick up, point out, hand in 等。

#### 2-4. 名词放在副词之前或之后：

可分离动词短语中，如果宾语是名词，既可放在副词前面，又可放在副词后面。

He is taking off his clothes and going to bed. (他正脱掉衣服，准备睡觉。)

动词      副词      (名词) 宾语



= He is taking his clothes off and going to bed.

动词

宾语

副词

2-5. 人称代名词、反身代词放介副词之前：

可分离动词短语中，如果宾语是人称代名词或反身代词，则放在副词前面。

Put them away, please. (请把它们收拾好。)

动词

人称代名词

副词

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. The police are looking into the case.

警察们在调查那件案子。

02. They turned down my offer.

他们拒绝了我的提议。

03. Something unexpected has turned up.

出现了令人意外的情况。

04. This paper comes out once a week.

这份报纸每星期出版一次。

05. The meeting has been called off.

会议被取消了。

06. I filled in an application form.

我填写了申请表。

07. Mr. Ericsson, please put it down.

艾瑞克森先生，请把东西放下来。

08. Please don't forget to hand it in.

请不要忘了把它交上来。

---

09. I can't figure out why you said that.

我不能理解你为什么那么说。

---

10. I won't let him down in any way.

无论如何我是不会让他失望的。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请使用提示的动词短语，翻译出正确的英语句子。

01. 没有人能够解释他的怪异行为。(account for)

---

02. 火车被大雾阻挡而晚点了。(hold up)

---

03. 我在公园等了她很长时间，但是她没有出现。(turn up)

---

04. 请勿践踏草坪！(keep off)

---

05. 如果我这次饶恕了你，你就能保证下次不会这么做了吗？(let off)

---

06. 不要把今天的事情拖到明天做。(pull off)

---

07. 别受骗上当。(take in)

---

08. 请关门。(shut off)

---

09. 你昨天买的这条裙子很漂亮, 快穿上吧。(put on)

---

10. 明天早上记得叫我起床。(wake up)

---

正确答案及题目译文:

01. Nobody could account for his extraordinary behavior.

---

02. The train was held up by fog and arrived late.

---

03. I waited for her in the park for a long time but she didn't turn up.

---

04. Keep off the grass, please!

---

05. If I let you off this time, will you promise never to do it again?

---

06. Never pull off till tomorrow what you can do today.

---

07. Don't be taken in.

---

08. Please shut off the door.

---

09. The skirt you bought yesterday is beautiful. Please put it on.

---

10. Don't forget to wake me up tomorrow morning.

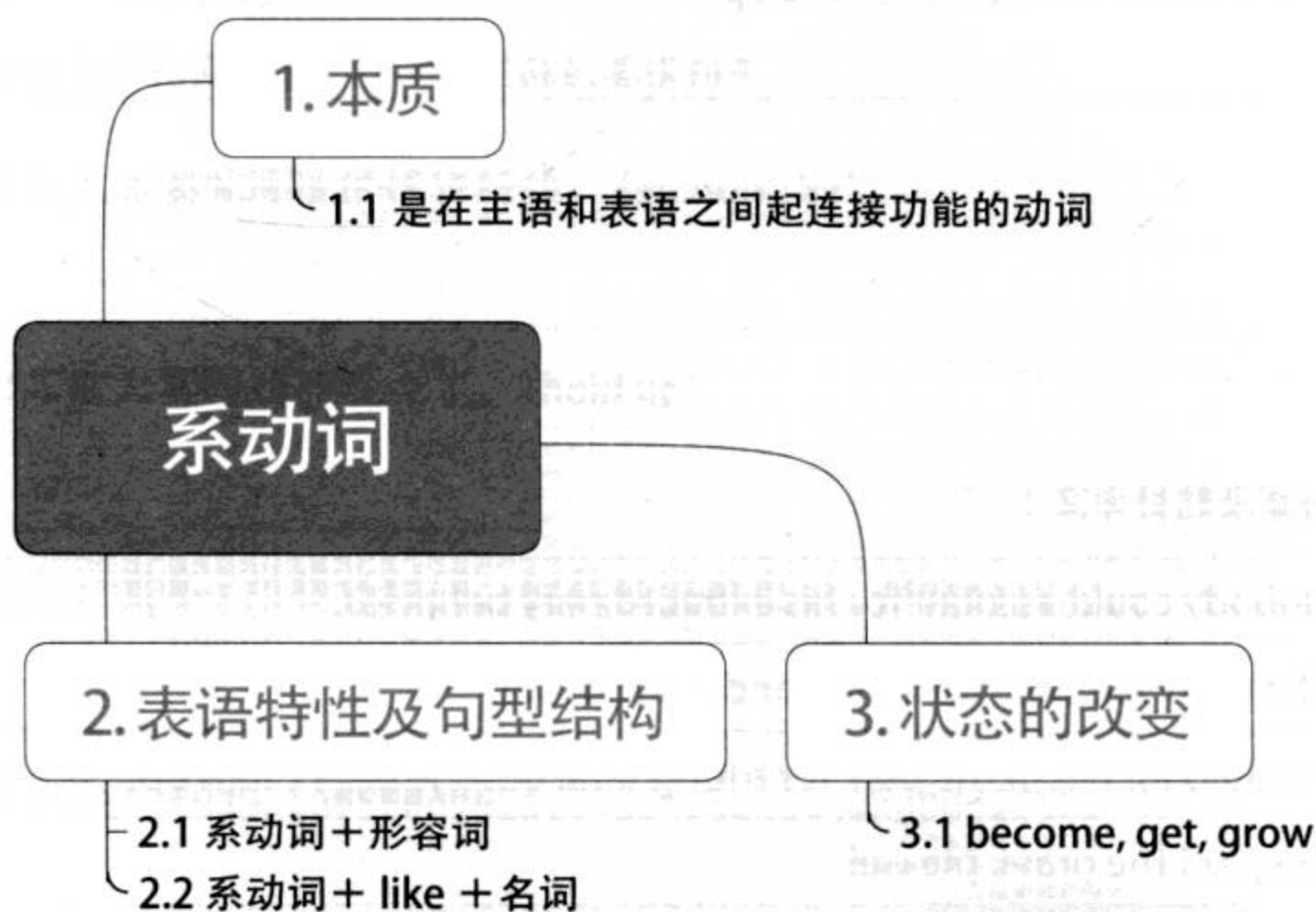
---



## 10 系动词 vs. 感官动词

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！

Grammar Mind Mapping



系动词是用来补充描述和指明事物的，常用形容词来补充说明主语的不足，使得整句意思更完整，常用的系动词有 seem, appear, look, feel, sound, taste, become, get, turn, smell, grow 等；感官动词是表示人的感觉的动词，常见的感官动词有 feel, hear, sound, see, taste, smell, look at 等。

## Part 1 系动词

### 1. 本质

系动词是在主语和补语之间起连接功能的动词

### 2. 补语特性及句型结构

2-1. 系动词 + 形容词

2-2. 系动词 + like + 名词

系动词所连接的表语一般为形容词。若要连接名词时可以在系动词后加 “like”，例如：

The story sounds interesting. (这个故事听起来很有趣。)

It sounds like an interesting story. (听起来是个有趣的故事。)

### 3. 状态的改变

状态的改变：become, get, grow

become, get, grow 等系动词可用来表示 “从一种状态变为另一种状态”，并且可以搭配使用进行时，表示（越来越……）。

I am getting more and more tired. (我变得越来越累。)

## Part 2 感官动词

### 1. 本质

表达人类感受的动词。

感官动词是表示人类感觉、感受的动词，故称为感官动词。可作完全及物动词或不完全及物动词，例如：listen to, hear, watch, see, feel 等。

I feel sick today. (我今天觉得不舒服。)

### 2. 句型结构及特性

2-1. 不完全及物动词 + 宾语 + 动词原形 → 表示全部过程

2-2. 不完全及物动词 + 宾语 + 现在分词 → 表示正在进行的动作

I saw the old lady cross the road. (我看到老太太过马路。)

I saw the old lady crossing the road. (我看见老太太正在过马路。)

### 3. 被动语态

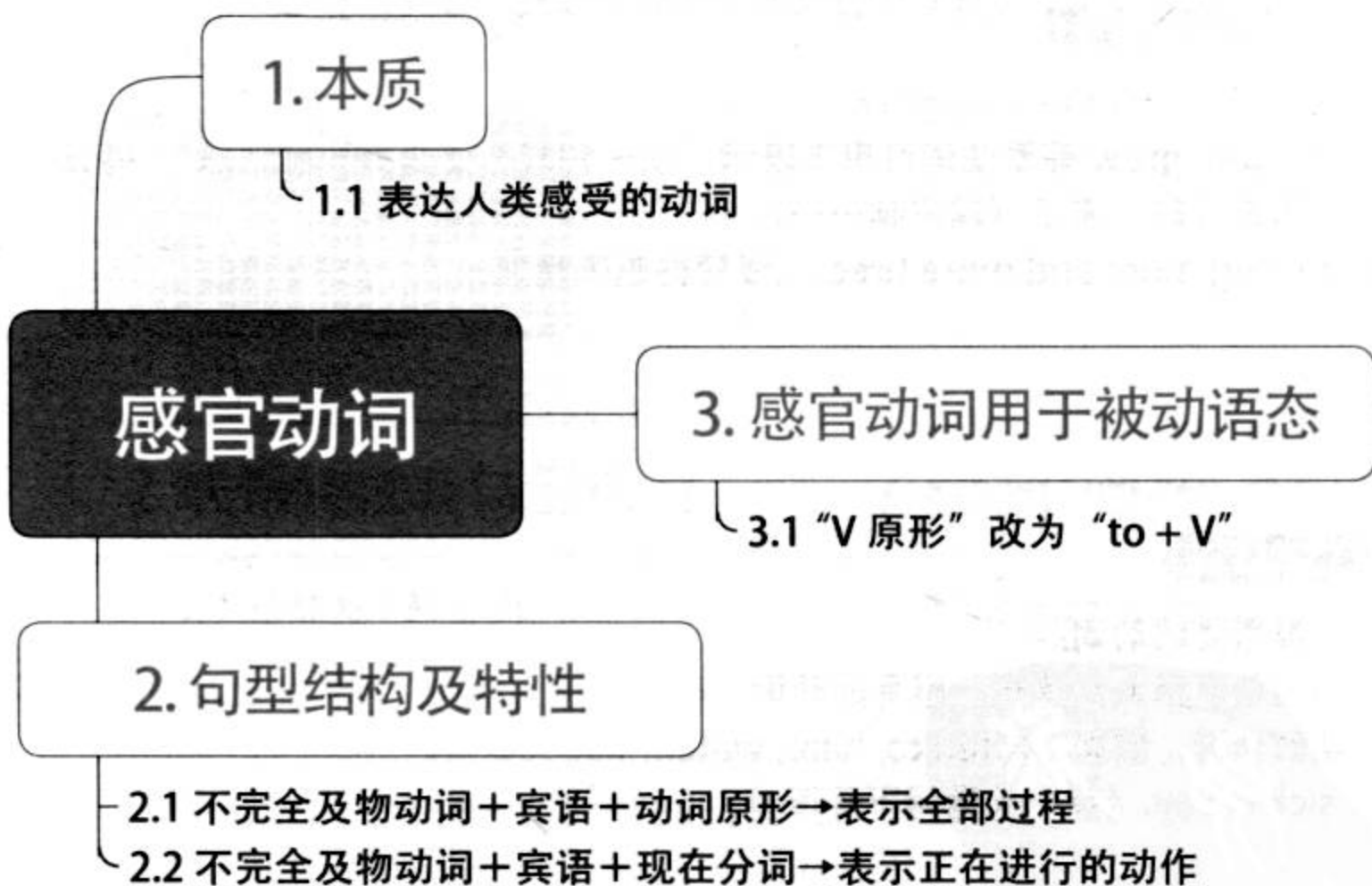
感官动词用于被动语态，“V 原形”改为“to + V”：

感官动词用于被动语态，后面原有动词原形要改为带 to 的不定式，例如：

I hear the boy sing every day.

The boy is heard **to sing** every day.

(我每天都听到那个男孩唱歌。)





## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. His suggestion sounds ridiculous.  
他的建议听起来很可笑。

---

02. The soup tastes good.  
这汤的味道尝起来不错。

---

03. He becomes lazy.  
他变懒了。

---

04. She feels nervous before the exam.  
考试前她很紧张。

---

05. It sounds like a good idea.  
听起来是个不错的主意。

---

06. The weather usually turns cold in the end of August.  
天气通常在八月底开始变冷。

---

07. You get fat again.  
你又变胖了。

---

08. The weather is getting hotter every day.  
天气一天天越来越热了。

## 04 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请将以下句子翻译为英语。

01. 我听到有人在唱歌。
-

02. 我昨天晚上觉得牙齿很痛。

03. 我看他进房间了。

04. 她长得像她妈妈。

05. 那时候他很开心。

06. 这款布料很柔顺。

07. 比赛越来越精彩了。

正确答案及题目译文：

01. I hear someone singing.

02. I felt toothache last night.

03. I saw him get in the room.

04. She looks like her mother very much.

05. He looked happy at that time.

06. This cloth feels so soft.

07. The game is getting more exciting.

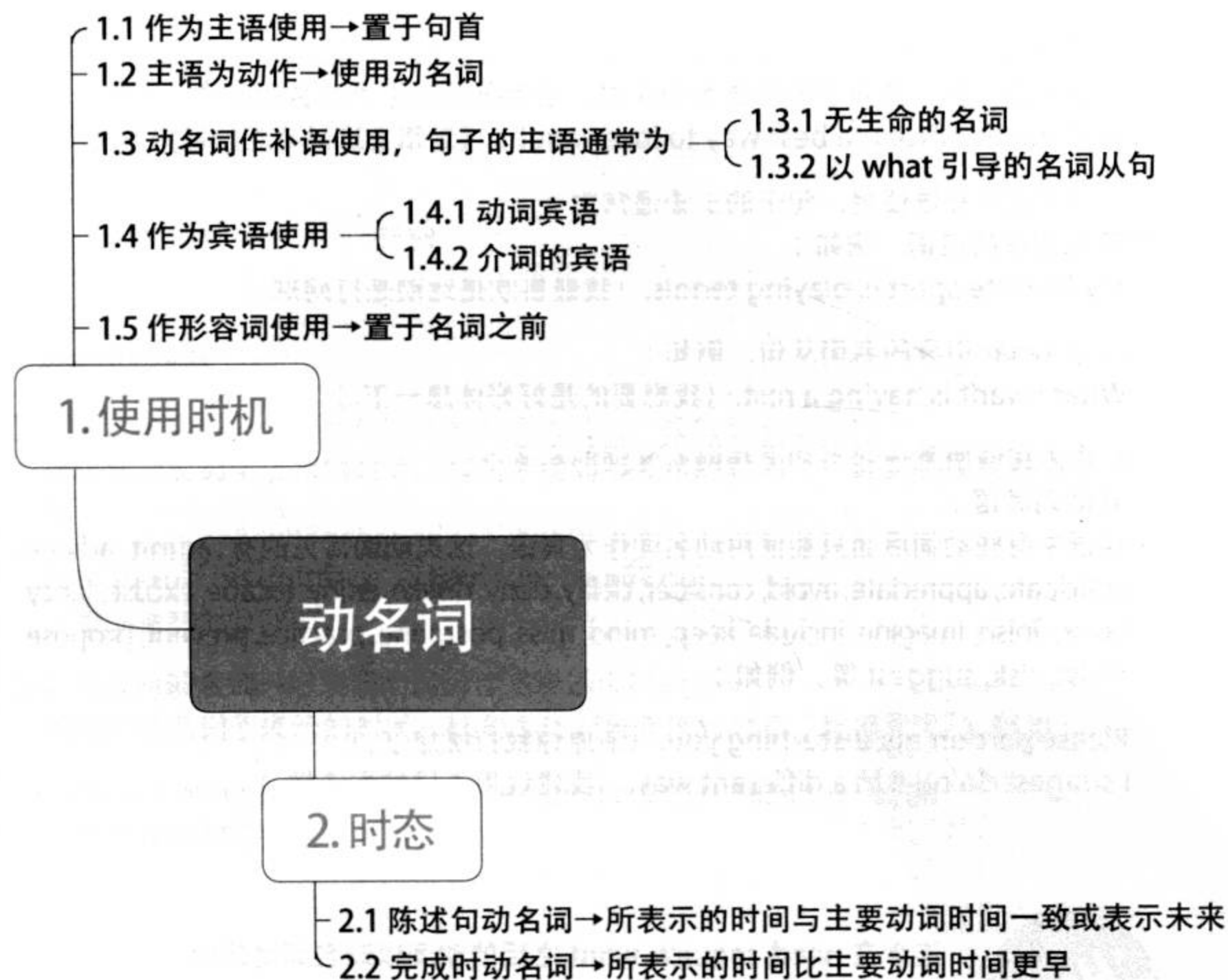
Step 2 了解英语中关键的关键——单词

# 11 动名词与不定式

## 01 图解语法，一看就会！

Grammar Mind Mapping

11 动名词与不定式





当一个句子中出现两个动词时，通常会用两种形式呈现。

一、动名词：动词 + ing → 具有动词及名词的特性，在句子中作为名词使用。

二、不定式：to + 动词原形 → 具有名词、形容词和副词的特性，在句子中作为主语、补语及副词使用。

## Part 1 动名词

### 1. 使用时机

1-1. 作为主语使用 → 置于句首：

当动名词作为主语时，通常位于句首，例如：

Seeing is believing. (眼见为实。)

1-2. 主语为动作 → 使用动名词：

在英语语法中，若句子的主语为动作时，通常必须转化为动名词形式。例如：

Walking to office is a best way to lose weight. (走路上班是减肥的最好方法。)

1-3. 动名词作补语使用，句子的主语通常为 →

a) 无生命的名词，例如：

My favorite sport is playing tennis. (我最喜欢是运动是打网球。)

b) 以 what 引导的名词从句，例如：

What I want is having a rest. (我想要的是好好休息一下。)

1-4. 作为宾语使用 → 可当动词宾语或介词的宾语：

a) 动词宾语：

英语中有些动词后面只能使用动名词作为宾语。这类动词常见的有：admit, advice, anticipate, appreciate, avoid, consider, delay, deny, dislike, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, favor, finish, imagine, include, keep, mind, miss, postpone, practice, prevent, propose, resist, risk, suggest 等。例如：

Please pardon my disturbing you. (请原谅我打扰您了。)

I suggest doing it in a different way. (我建议用不同的方法做。)

### TIPS!

连接在 need, require, want 之后的动词以动名词呈现时，表示被动意义。例如：

The car needs repairing. (这辆车需要修理。)

## b) 介词的宾语：

英语中有些连接在介词后面的动词需要以动名词的形式呈现。例如：

She is worrying about discussing the new proposal with sales manager tomorrow very much. (她现在非常担心明天要跟业务经理讨论新方案。)

## TIPS!

这类介词后面连接动名词的状况常常出现在特定介词短语中，例如：be afraid of, be careful of, talk about, worry about.

## 1-5. 作形容词使用→置于名词之前：

动名词放在名词之前可作为修饰用形容词使用，例如：

He is an easy-going man. (他是个很好相处的人。)

动名词→形容词 名词

## 2. 时态

## 2-1. 陈述句动名词→所表时间与主要动词时间一致或未来：

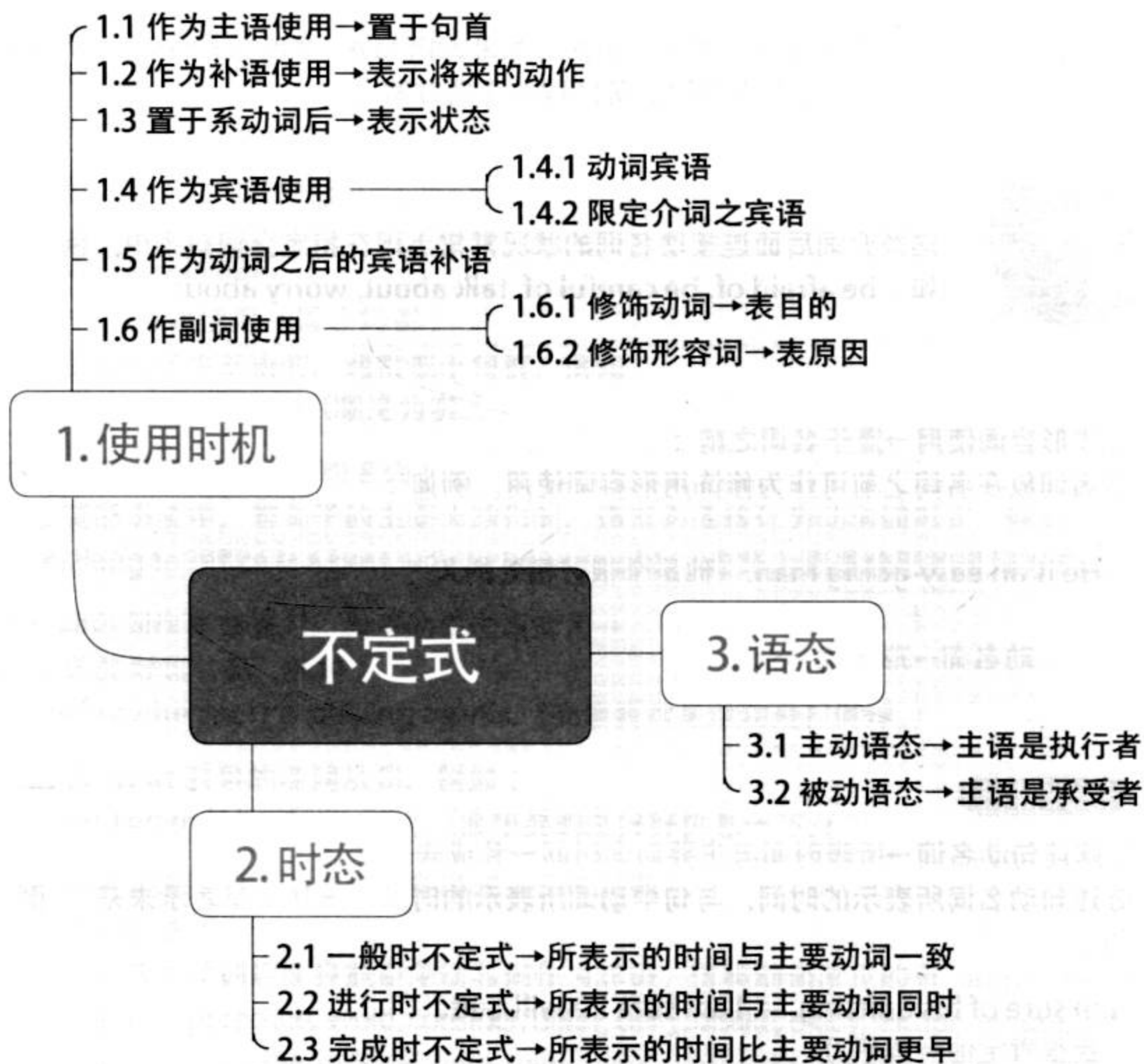
陈述句动名词所表示的时间，与句中动词所表示的时间“一致或是表示未来”。例如：

I am sure of his quitting. = I am sure he will quit.  
(我很肯定他会辞职。)

## 2-2. 完成时动名词→所表示的时间比主要动词时间更早：

完成时动名词所表示的时间，比句中动词所表示的时间“更早发生”。例如：

I am sure of his having done so. = I am sure that he has done so.  
(我很肯定他曾经这样做过。)



## Part 2 不定式

### 1. 使用时机

#### 1-1. 作为主语使用→置于句首：

不定式做为主语使用时，一般表示具体的动作，常置于句首。例如：

To save time is to lengthen life. (节约时间就等于延长了人的生命。)



## 1-2. 作为补语使用→表示将来的动作：

不定式作补语使用时，常表示将来的动作。而句中主语常常是表示意向、打算、计划的词，例如 wish, idea, task, purpose, duty, job 等。

My work is to clean the classroom every day. (我的工作是每天打扫教室。)

## 1-3. 置于系动词后→表示状态：

不定式置于 seem, appear, prove 等系动词后面时，表示状态，例如：

This plan seems to be possible. (这个计划似乎是可行的。)

## 1-4. 作为宾语使用→可当动词宾语或限定介词的宾语：

## a) 动词宾语：

不定式常在下列动词后做宾语，例如 afford, agree, apply, arrange, ask, attempt, beg, begin, care, choose, claim, consent, demand, decide, desire, determine, expect, fail, hope, hesitate, hate, intend, learn, like, manage, mean, neglect, offer, plan, prepare, pretend, promise, refuse, resolve, seek, tend, threaten, want 等。

He promises to keep my secret. (他答应替我保守秘密。)

## b) 限定介词之宾语：

不定式通常不做介词的宾语。但是遇到 but, except, besides, than, instead of, about 这几个特殊介词，不定式可连接在后面作为宾语。例如：

We can do nothing but to wait. (除了等我们什么也做不了。)

## 1-5. 作为动词之后的宾语补语

不定式常跟在下列动词之后做宾语补语：ask, advise, allow, beg, cause, compel, command, enable, encourage, expect, feel, force, find, hear, have, inform, invite, let, make, mean, notice, order, permit, persuade, remind, require, request, teach, tell, urge, watch, warn, watch 等。

The teacher asked her to answer the question. (老师叫她回答问题。)

## TIPS!

不定式在下列动词的后面做宾语补语时，需要省略 to，例如 feel, hear, listen to, let, have, make, look at, see, watch, notice, observe, help 等，但是变成被动语态时，省略的 to 必须再补上。Whenever something is wrong with you, please do let me know. (无论什么时候你出问题了，请告诉我。)

## 1-6. 作副词使用

### a) 修饰动词→表目的：

不定式做副词修饰动词时，通常表示特定目的，或是表示出乎意料的结果。

He woke up to find everybody gone.

(他起来后发现所有人都不见了。) → 不定式表结果

### b) 修饰形容词→表原因：

不定式做副词修饰形容词时，通常表示原因，并且通常与以下表示感情的形容词连用：glad, sorry, proud, angry, ashamed, excited, disappointed, interested...

I am sorry to hear this information. (我很遗憾听到这个消息。) → 不定式表原因

## 2. 时态

### 2-1. 陈述句不定式→所表示的时间与主要动词一致

I like to read newspaper. (我喜欢看报纸。)

### 2-2. 进行时不定式→所表示的时间与主要动词同时

I am very glad to be work with you. (我很高兴能与你一同工作。)

### 2-3. 完成时不定式→所表示的时间比主要动词更早

I am sorry to have kept you waiting so long. (很抱歉让你等这么久。)

## 3. 语态

### 3-1. 主动语态→主语是执行者

句中不定式使用主动语态时，通常代表主语是该动作的执行者。例如：

I am glad to attend your marriage. (我很高兴能出席你的婚礼。)

### 3-2. 被动语态→主语是承受者

句中不定式使用被动语态时，通常代表主语是该动作的承受者。例如：

He didn't like to be laughed at. (他不喜欢被人嘲笑。)

# 02 延伸用法，事半功倍！

Learning Plus!

1. 动名词和不定式都可以做主语。不定式做主语表示具体的动作，动名词做主语则可以表示抽象或一般性的动作或情况。例如：

To play with fire will be dangerous. (玩火是非常危险的。)

→指特定的人的具体动作

Playing with fire is dangerous. (玩火是非常危险的。)

→泛指玩火

2. 在 allow, advise, forbid, permit 等动词后, 以另一个动词作宾语时, 要用动名词形式。但如果后面有名词、代名词作宾语时, 需连接不定式。例如:

You don't allow smoking here. (你不允许在这里抽烟。)

I don't allow you to smoke here. (我不允许你在这里抽烟。)

## 03 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. Smoking may cause cancer.

吸烟会致癌。

02. It's useless arguing about it.

争论这件事没有意义。

03. Her hobby is painting.

她的爱好是绘画。

04. Remember to tell him the news.

记得告诉他这个消息。

05. I don't feel like going to the movie.

我不想去看电影。

06. To master a foreign language is really important nowadays.

如今, 掌握一门外语真的很重要。

07. It's kind of you to think so much of us.

你为我们考虑这么多真是太好了。



08. To see is to believe.

眼见为实。

09. You must learn to look after yourself.

你必须自己学会照顾自己。

10. I don't know what to do next.

我不知道接下来该怎么做。

## 04 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. She can't help \_\_\_\_\_ the house because her guests is about to come.

☐ A to clean

☐ B cleaning

☐ C cleaned

☐ D being cleaned

02. It is difficult to get used \_\_\_\_\_ on the sofa.

☐ A sleep

☐ B to sleeping

☐ C slept

☐ D to sleep

03. Though \_\_\_\_\_ money, his parents managed to send him to university.

☐ A lacked

☐ B lacking of

☐ C lacking

☐ D lacked in

04. She pretended \_\_\_\_\_ me when I passed by.

☐ A not to see

☐ B not seeing

☐ C to not see

☐ D have not seen

05. It's no use \_\_\_\_\_ to get a bargain in the department store.

☐ A to except

☐ B excepting

☐ C wanting

☐ D you excepting

06. After \_\_\_\_\_ for the job, you will be required to take a language test.

☐ A being interviewed

☐ B interviewed

☐ C interviewing

☐ D having interviewed

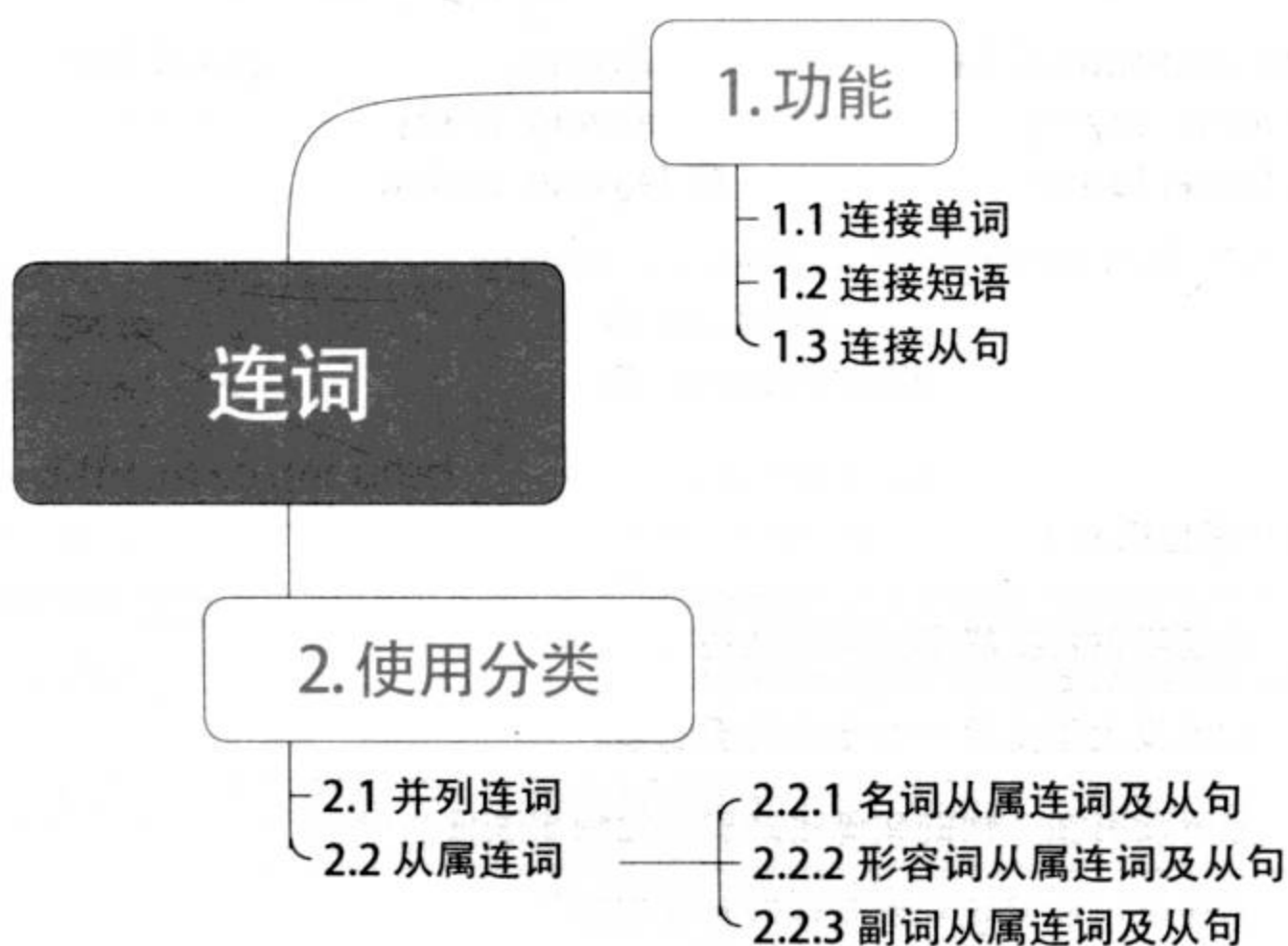
07. It was unbelievable that the fans waited outside the gym for three hours just \_\_\_\_\_ a look at the sports stars.  
☐ A had ☐ B having  
☐ C to have ☐ D have
08. I saw him \_\_\_\_\_ out of the room.  
☐ A go ☐ B had gone  
☐ C has gone ☐ D goes
09. No one can avoid \_\_\_\_\_ by advertisements.  
☐ A to be influenced ☐ B being influenced  
☐ C influencing ☐ D having influence
10. It was impolite of him \_\_\_\_\_ without \_\_\_\_\_ good-bye.  
☐ A to leave, saying ☐ B leaving, to say  
☐ C to leave, to say ☐ D leaving, saying

正确答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 她忍不住打扫房子，因为她的客人快到了。
02. ☐ B 在沙发上睡觉是一件很难习惯的事。
03. ☐ C 尽管没有钱，他的父母还是安排让他出国念大学。
04. ☐ A 当我经过的时候，她假装没有看到我。
05. ☐ B 期望在百货公司中找到便宜是没有用的。
06. ☐ A 工作面试结束后，你将会被要求参加语言能力测试。
07. ☐ C 粉丝们在体育馆外面苦等三个小时，仅仅是为了见运动明星一面，这件事真是难以置信。
08. ☐ A 我看到他走出这间房间。
09. ☐ B 没有人可以避免被广告所影响。
10. ☐ A 他没有说再见就离开真是没有礼貌。

## 12 连词

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping



#### 1. 功能

##### 1-1. 连接单词

love and hate (爱和恨)

a difficult but worthy life (艰难却有价值的人生)

neither the teacher nor his student (不是那位老师也不是他的学生)

##### 1-2. 连接短语

ready to start and easy to finish (准备出发和容易完成)



## 1-3. 连接从句

Johnny has not smoked since his daughter was born. (自从强尼的女儿出生后, 他就  
没有抽过烟了。)

## 2. 使用分类

## 2-1. 并列连词

此类连词有 and, but, so, yet, still, either, or, neither, nor, than, either...or, neither...nor, not only...but also, as well as 等。例如：

I will do it right away and do it well. (我现在就做, 而且我会把这件事做好。)

She agreed with Martin's proposal, but she didn't want to join his team. (她同意马丁的  
提案, 但是她不想加入马丁的团队。)

## 2-2. 从属连词

## a) 名词从属连词及从句

可用来当主语和宾语, 此类连词有 whoever, whatever, who, whom, which, that, when, where, how, what, why, whether 等。

When mother finished the cake was a surprise. (妈妈完成蛋糕的时间是个惊喜。) →  
名词从句当主语

Micheal joined the team which is leaded by his father. (迈克加入了由他爸爸领军的团  
队。) → 名词从句当宾语

## b) 形容词从属连词及从句

可用来当主语补语和形容词, 此类连词有 who, whom, whose, which, that, when, where 等。

The point is who did this. (重点是谁完成了这件事。) → 形容词从句当主语补语

The old lady who has 5 dogs is my mother-in-law. (有五只狗的老太太是我的岳  
母。) → 形容词从句当形容词

## c) 副词从属连词及从句

可以当副词使用或是引出副词从句, 此类连词有 after, as, although, because, before, if, since, though, until, when, whenever, while, wherever 等。

She woke up after I left home. (我一出家门她就醒了。) → 连词带出副词从句

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. Air and water are indispensable for human beings.

空气和水对人类来说必不可少。

02. You may go, only come back early.

你可以去，只是要早点回来。

03. We should strike while the iron is hot.

我们要趁热打铁。

04. Where there is a will, there is a way.

有志者，事竟成。

05. We wouldn't lose heart even if we should fail ten times.

我们就是失败十次也不灰心。

06. Now that you are all back, we'd better start the work right now.

你们既然都回来了，我们最好马上就开始工作。

07. Wherever you are, I will be with you.

不管你到哪，我都会在你身边。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01 I was reading a newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ he came in.

☐ A as soon as

☐ B since

☐ C while

☐ D when

02. Hurry up, \_\_\_\_\_ you'll be late for school.

☐ A and

☐ B but

☐ C so

☐ D or

03. Excuse me for breaking in, \_\_\_\_\_ I have some news for you.  
☐ A so ☐ B and  
☐ C but ☐ D yet
04. \_\_\_\_\_ you've got a chance, you might as well make full use of it.  
☐ A Now that ☐ B After  
☐ C Although ☐ D As soon as
05. The old man \_\_\_\_\_ lives in that old house is my uncle.  
☐ A who ☐ B which  
☐ C where ☐ D how
06. One can't learn a foreign language well \_\_\_\_\_ he studies hard.  
☐ A because ☐ B though  
☐ C unless ☐ D if
07. \_\_\_\_\_ you decide to take this job, you should try to make it a success.  
☐ A Whatever ☐ B Unless  
☐ C Whenever ☐ D If only
08. I'll accept any job \_\_\_\_\_ I don't have to get up early.  
☐ A lest ☐ B as long as  
☐ C in case ☐ D though

正确答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ D 当他走进来时，我正在看报纸。

02. ☐ D 快一点，不然你上学就要迟到了。

03. ☐ C 很抱歉打断你，但是我有消息要带给你。

04. ☐ A 你现在有个机会，同样地你可以善加利用。

05. ☐ A 住在那间房子里的老人是我叔叔。

06. ☐ C 没有人可以不努力用功就把一门外语学好。

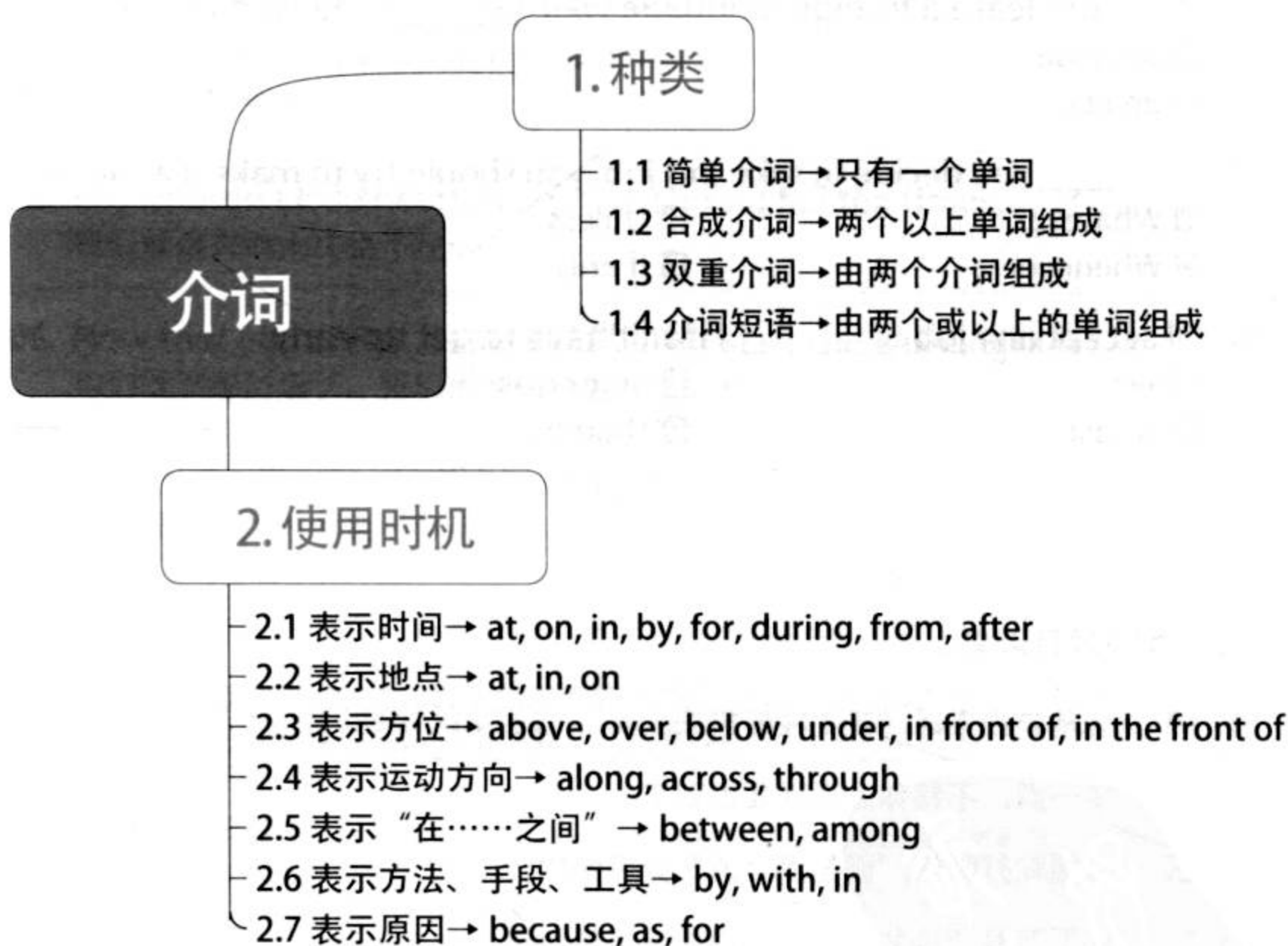
07. ☐ A 一旦你决定接受这份工作，你就应该下决心把它做好。

08. ☐ B 只要可以让我早上多睡一会，我可以接受任何工作。



## 13 介词

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping



介词。是用来表明单词与单词之间的各种关系，主要是用来引出具有名词作用的单词，例如名词、动名词、代名词及名词从句。

## 1. 种类

### 1-1. 简单介词→只有一个单词：

简单介词是指只有一个单词的介词。例如：at, before, for, from, in, next, of, over, since, to, under, with 等。

### 1-2. 合成介词→两个以上单词组成：

合成介词是指由两个单词所合成的介词。例如：inside, into, out of, outside, upon, within, without 等。

### 1-3. 双重介词→由两个介词组成：

双重介词是指由两个介词所组成的介词。例如：according to (根据)、from behind (从……后面)、along with (与……一起) 等。

### 1-4. 介词短语→由两个或以上的单词组成：

介词短语是指由两个或以上的单词组成的短语。例如：at the end of (在……最后)、because of (由于)、by means of (以……为手段)、in case of (万一)、in need of (需要)、in front of (在……之前)、in spite of (尽管……还是)、instead of (代替)、owing to (由于)。

## 2. 使用时机

### 2-1. 表示时间→ at, on, in, by, for, during, from, after

a) at：用来表示特定的时间、节日、年龄等。例如：

at night (在晚上)、at 5 p.m. (在下午五点)。

I will meet you at 10 a.m. tomorrow morning. (明天早上 10 点见。)

b) on：用来表示某一天或星期几，指明具体的时间。例如：

on Friday (在礼拜五)、on the date you born (在你出生的那天)

Sarah's birthday this year is on Saturday. (莎拉今年的生日是星期六。)

c) in：用来表示一天中某段时间，指天、年、月、季节、周次等。

例如：in the morning (在早上)、in Summer (在夏天)、in 1991 (在 1991 年)

I always like to go the beach in Summers. (每年夏天我都喜欢去海边。)

d) by：表示“……的时候、到……、等到……，已经……”，用在日期、时间的“前面”，例如：by 5 o'clock (到五点的时候)。

Please wait for my information. I will come back by 7 p.m. (请等待我的消息，我会在七点的时候回来。)

e) **for** : 表示一段不明确的时间, 指时间的长度, 动作是断断续续的。例如:  
I have been living here for ten years. (我已经住在这里 10 年了。)

f) **since** : 表示从过去某一时间点开始, 到现在的一个时间点。例如:  
I have been living here since 2000. (我从 2000 年开始就住在这里了。)

g) **during** : 在……期间。表示一段从开始到结束相当分明的时间片段。动作是规律性的持续, 例如:

He swims every day during this summer. (在今年夏天, 他每天都会游泳。)

h) **from** : 自从……。仅说明从什么时候开始, 不说明某动作或情况持续多久, 例如:

I began to work from this morning. (我从今天早上就开始工作了。)

i) **after** : 表示在……之后。如果后面接一段不明确的时间, 就表示从过去某一段时间以后; 如果后面接一个精确的时间点, 表示从“某一时刻以后”。例如:

My mother was exhausted after 3 hour's housework. (妈妈在做完三个小时的家务事之后十分疲惫。)

We'll go out for a walk after dinner. (我们晚餐之后会出去散步。)

## 2-2. 表示地点 → at, in, on

a) **at** : 在一个精确的点 (point), 表示地点、地方、位置, 指范围较小的地方, 或是特定的地点。例如:

at the school's front gate (在学校的前门)。

at the same restaurant (在同一间餐厅)。

Tommy was waiting for you at the bus stop for almost 3 hours!

(汤米已经在公车站等你等了快三个小时了!)

b) **in** : 表示在某个特定、有明显区域范围的空间之内 (enclosed space), 例如:  
in London (在伦敦)、in the garden (在花园里面)、in my bag (在我的包里)。

Iris has an important meeting at the World Trade Center in Bangkok.

↑  
特定地点

↑  
特定范围内

(艾瑞斯在曼谷的世界贸易中心有一个重要的会议。)



c) on: 表示在一个位置或地点的上方 (surface), 例如:

on the wall (在墙上)、on the floor (在地板上)、on a page of the book (在这本书的一页上)。

I live on the 8th floor at Wall Street in New York. (我住在纽约华尔街的八楼。)

2-3. 表示方位 → above, over, below, under, in front of, in the front of

a) above: 指“在……上方”, 不强调是否垂直, 与 below 相对, 例如:

The bird is flying above my head. (这只鸟飞过了我的头上。)

b) over: 指“垂直”的上方, 与 under 相对, 但通常是指上面的物体从一边移动到另一边的情况。例如:

There is a bridge over the river. (有一条桥横越那条河。)

c) below, under: 都表示“在……下面”, 但 under 在正下方, below 不一定在正下方。There is a ball under the chair. (有颗球在椅子下面。)

My new skirt came below my ankles. (我的新裙子到我的脚踝以下。)

d) in front of / in the front of: 都表示在……前面, 但 in front of 指甲物在乙物之前, 两个物体为各自独立的物体, 反义词是 behind (在……后面); in the front of 指甲物在乙物的“内部”, 也就是乙物包含了甲物在内, 反义词为 at the back of (在……范围内的后面)。

There is a river in front of my house.

(我家门前有一条小河。) → 我家与小河各自独立, 没有接触

Our teacher stands in the front of the classroom.

(我们老师站在教室的前面。) → 老师在教室里面, 但是站在教室的前面

2-4. 表示运动方向 → along, across, through

a) along: 表示“沿着……”, 例如: along the river (沿着这条河)。

Just walk along the street and you will find the bus stop. (只要沿着这条街一直走, 你就会看到公共汽车站了。)

b) across: 表示“横过……”, 通常与“道路、河川、平原”等地点连用, 例如: across the road (横过马路)。

The Wang's just live across the street. (王氏一家人就住在这条街的对面。)

c) through: 表示“穿过……、穿越……”, 指从物体内部穿过, 例如: through the door (穿过门)。

I saw Sandy through the window. (我透过玻璃窗看到了珊蒂。)

2-5. 表示在……之间→ **between, among**

a) **between**：指在两个人或事物之间，例如：

**between you and me**（在你跟我之间）。

**My boss divided all the profit between John and him.**（老板把所有的利润分给了他和约翰。）

b) **among**：指在三个或以上的人或物之间，例如：**among all of us.**

**My boss divided all the profit among all of us.**

（我老板把所有的利润分给了我们所有人。）

2-6. 表示方法、手段、工具→ **by, with, in**

a) **by**：表示以……方法、手段或泛指某种交通工具。例如：

**I go to school by bus every day.**（我每天都坐公共汽车上学。）

b) **with**：表示用……工具、手段，一般接具体的工具和手段，如：

**I cut the apple with knife.**（我用刀子切开苹果。）

c) **in**：表示用……方式，用～语言（语调、笔墨、颜色）等，例如：

**He talks with me in English for 15 minutes every day.**（他每天都用英语跟我说话 15 分钟。）

2-7. 表示原因→ **because, as, for**

a) **because**：表示直接的、明确的原因，用来回答 **why** 的问句。例如：

**He was late for school, because he didn't catch the bus.**

（他上学迟到了，因为他没有赶上公共汽车。）

b) **as**：表示由于……，鉴于……，指一种显而易见、谈话双方已知的理由。如：

**She stayed at home as she was ill.**（她待在家，因为她生病了。）

c) **for**：表示由于、因为，指一种间接原因，甚至只是一种附带的说明。例如：

**It must have rained last night, for the road is wet.**（昨天晚上一定下雨了，因为路是湿的。）

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. **He is intent on winning.**

他一心只想着赢。

02. Joe was very disappointed at not finding her at home.  
乔伊发现她不在家很失望。
- 
03. I shall prevail on him to make the attempt.  
我将说服他试一试。
- 
04. We concentrated on doing one job at a time.  
我们集中精力一次做一份工作。
- 
05. I don't wish to break in on your thoughts.  
我不是有意打断你的思绪的。
- 
06. He achieved his aim by force of sheer determination.  
他完全凭决心达到了他的目标。
- 
07. Such irresponsible conduct can only work to the prejudice of our cause.  
这种不负责任的行为只会有损于我们的事业。
- 
08. He is working hard now with an eye to the future.  
他为了前途而现在努力工作。
- 
09. In the event of an accident, the police must be called at once.  
如果出了事故，应该立刻叫警察。
- 
10. She was cheated out of 1,000 dollars by the young man.  
她被一个年轻男人骗走了 1000 美元。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请填入适合题目句中底线的介词。

01. Please don't get mad \_\_\_\_\_ me. I was only trying to help.
02. Fruit is rich \_\_\_\_\_ vitamins.
03. John was impatient \_\_\_\_\_ his daughter.



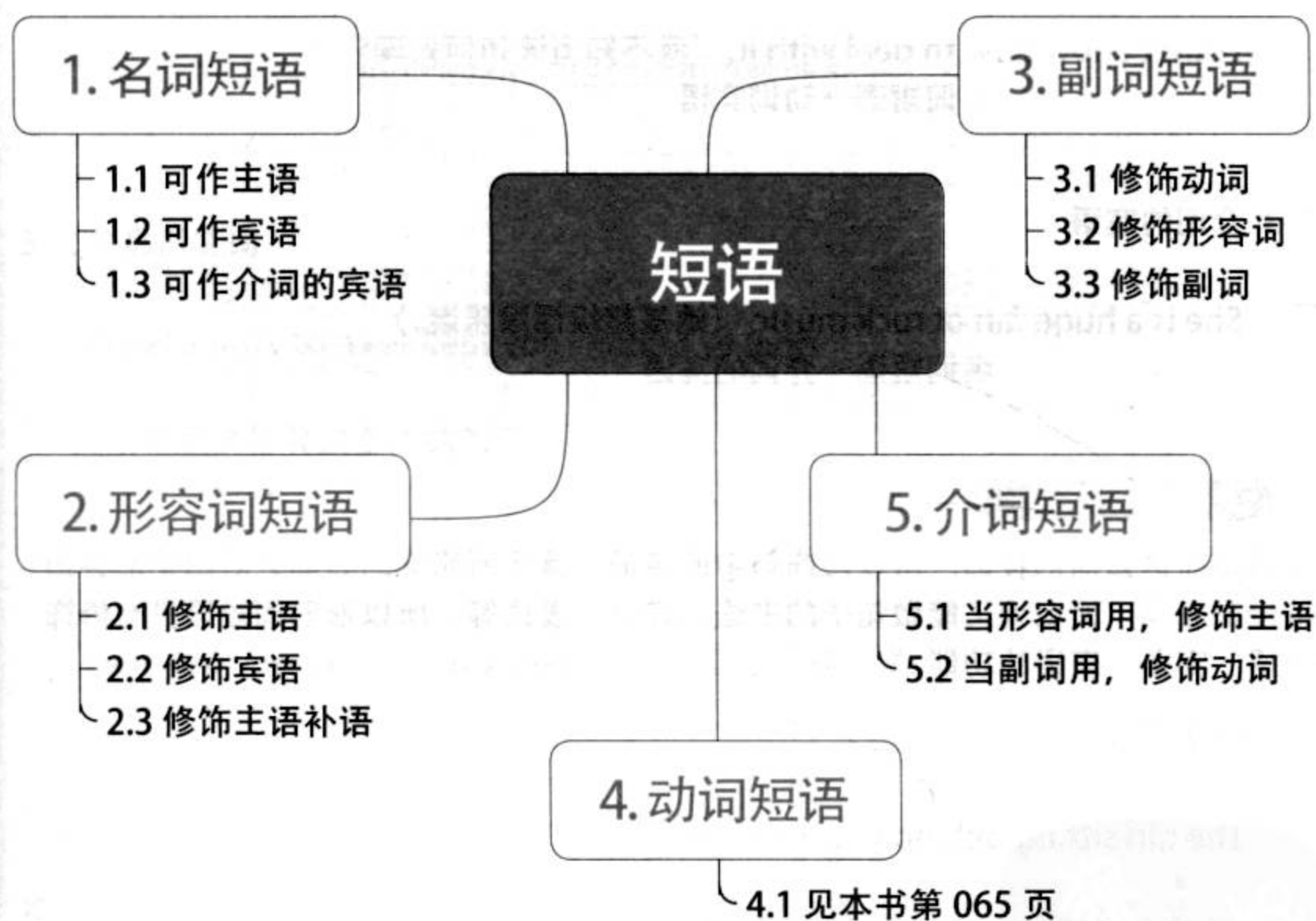
04. Cathy was particular \_\_\_\_\_ the jewelry she wore.
05. The jury decided that Susan was guilty \_\_\_\_\_ murder.
06. The word derives \_\_\_\_\_ Latin.
07. Everyone blamed you \_\_\_\_\_ a certain mistake, you need to say something.
08. This water taste \_\_\_\_\_ salt.
09. It's rude to point \_\_\_\_\_ someone.
10. I'll find someone to fill in this formula \_\_\_\_\_ you.

正确答案及题目译文：

01. at	请不要对我生气。我只是想要帮忙。
02. in	水果富有维他命。
03. with	约翰对他的女儿失去耐性了。
04. about	凯西对于她配戴的珠宝特别讲究。
05. of	陪审团认定苏珊犯有谋杀罪。
06. from	这个单词是从拉丁语过来的。
07. for	每个人都因为一项错误而责怪你，你一定要说些什么才行。
08. of	水尝起来有盐的味道。
09. at	用手指着别人是很没礼貌的。
10. for	我会找人来帮你填写这份表格。

Step 2 了解英语中关键的关键——单词

## 14 短语

14  
短  
语01 图解语法，一看就会！  
Grammar Mind Mapping

短语是指由两个或两个以上的英语单词所组合的词语，其中不包含主语和动词，连在一起具有类似一种词类作用的字群。

## 1. 名词短语

名词短语如同名词，可做句子中的：

### 1-1. 主语

Letting me down is the most terrible thing you've ever done.

名词短语→S

(让我失望是你做过的最糟糕的事情。)

### 1-2. 及物动词的宾语

I don't know how to deal with it. (我不知道该如何处理它。)

名词短语→动词宾语

### 1-3. 介词的宾语

She is a huge fan of rock music. (她是超级摇滚乐迷。)

名词短语→介词的宾语

## 2. 形容词短语

形容词短语如同形容词，用以修饰句中的名词，置于所修饰的名词之后由于形容词能修饰名词，而名词又能做句子的主语、宾语、表语等，所以形容词短语具有修饰主语、宾语、表语的功能。

### 2-1. 修饰主语

The girl sitting behind you is my best friend.

(坐在你身后的女孩是我最好的朋友。)

### 2-2. 修饰宾语

The company offered the job to the person with the best experience.

(公司把工作交给最有经验的人。)



## 2-3. 修饰主语补语

This is a book of many interesting stories.

(这是一本有许多趣味故事的书。)

## 3. 副词短语

副词短语如同副词，用来修饰句中的动词、形容词、副词和整句。

## 3-1. 修饰动词

He spoke loudly and clearly. (他说话很清晰洪亮。)

## 3-2. 修饰形容词

We are sorry to have kept you waiting so long.

(很抱歉要你等这么久的时间。)

## 3-3. 修饰副词

He is too young to go to school. (他太小还不能上学。)

## 4. 动词短语

动词短语是由动词加上副词所形成，这些副词常见的有 up, down, in, out, on, off....

4-1. 宾语为名词时→放在短语之后或是中间，例如：

take off the coat 或 take the coat off.

4-2. 宾语为代名词时→放在短语中间，例如：put it up。

## 5. 介词短语

介词短语就是介词和宾语连在一起，当形容词或副词用。

5-1. 当形容词用，修饰主语：

The boy with blonde hair is playing soccer there.

↑                      ↑  
(棕色头发的男孩正在那儿踢足球。)

5-2. 当副词用，修饰动词：

You may come to my living room anytime. (你可以随时来我的客厅和厨房。)

↑                      ↑

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. I will call on you next Sunday.

我下个星期天会去拜访你。

02. I want to run some errands.

我要去办点杂事。

03. There is a bunch of books in my living room.

我的客厅里有一堆书。

04. He pulled an all-nighter last night.

他昨晚熬夜了。

05. They hang out a lot.

他们常在一起。

06. Above all, we must finish the work at hand.

最重要的是，我们必须把手上的工作完成。

07. As a matter of fact, I'm a very efficient worker.

事实上，我是个做事非常有效率的员工。

08. I will go with the chicken noodle soup.

我会选择鸡肉汤面。

09. Take a little more money with you, just in case.

多带一点钱在身上，以备不时之需。

10. You've said a lot, but nothing was to the point.

你说了很多，但都没有说到重点。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请将题目句翻译成英语。

01. 我们为何不停车，下车一会儿呢？

02. 在你出门前把帽子带上。

03. 请打开灯，这里太暗了。

04. 我只能一天一天的等待奇迹的发生。

05. 关于那份新的工作，你接到公司的通知了吗？

06. 我相信这个产品会非常畅销。



07. 你必须准时赶到约定的地方。

---

08. 请千万小心，别让小孩靠近马路。

---

09. 警察正在调查电脑失窃的案件。

---

10. 没有证据可以证明我是被陷害的。

---

正确答案及题目译文：

01. Why don't we stop and get out of the car for a while?

---

02. Put your hat on before you leave the house.

---

03. Please turn on the light; it's too dark here.

---

04. I can only wait day after day for miracles to happen.

---

05. Have you heard from the company about that new job?

---

06. I would count on this product becoming a bestseller.

---

07. You must make it to the appointment on time.

---

08. Please be sure to keep the children away from the street!

---

09. The police are looking into the matter of the stolen computers.

---

10. There was no evidence to prove that I was being set up.

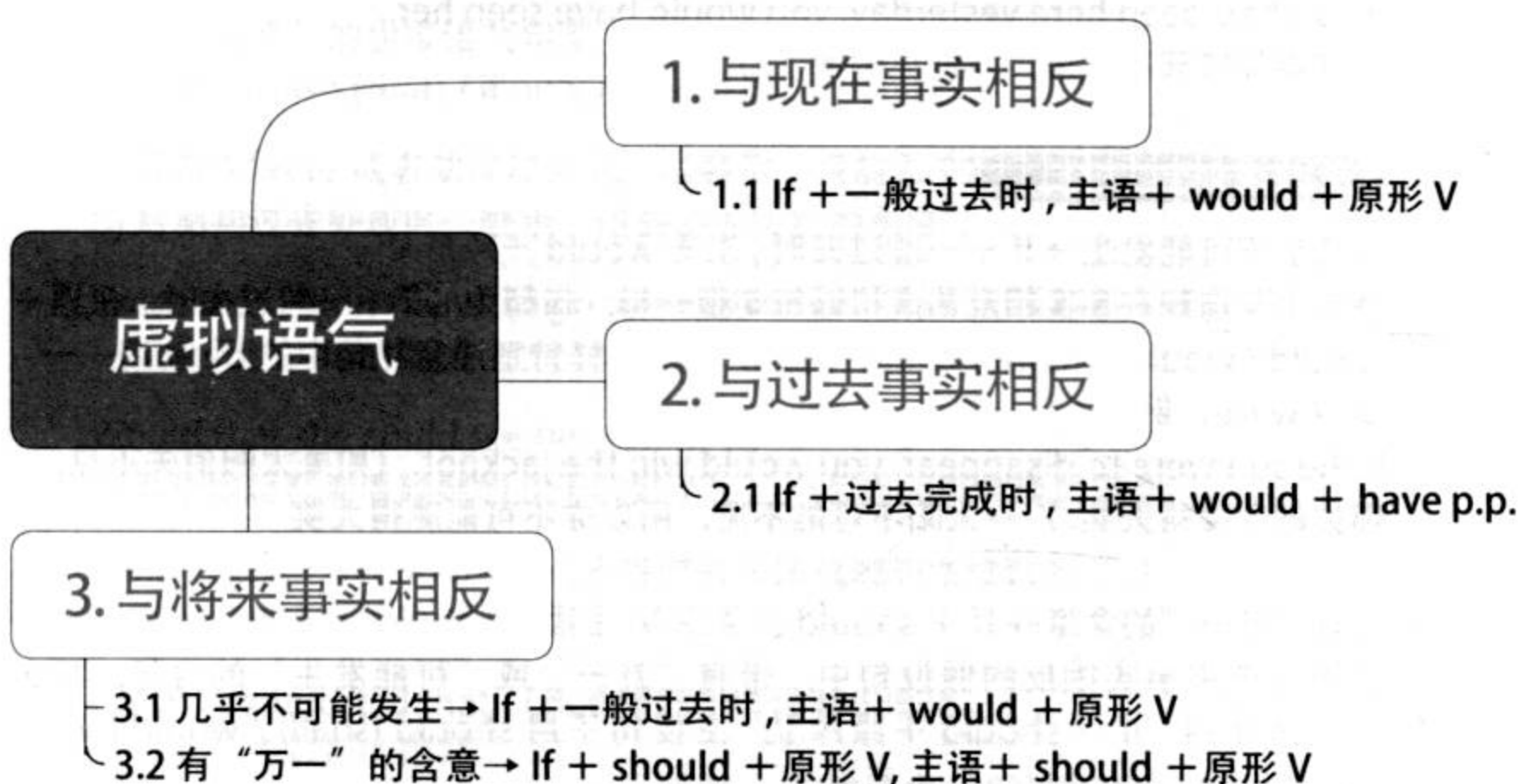
---

Step 3 该如何使用进阶的句子?

## 15 虚拟语气

### 01 图解语法, 一看就会!

Grammar Mind Mapping



虚拟语气用来表示说的话不是事实或者是不可能发生的情况, 而是一种愿望、建议、假设。虚拟语气有三种基本类型: 与现在事实相反, 与过去事实相反, 与将来事实相反。

#### 1. 与现在事实相反

If + 一般过去时, 主语 would + 原形 V

表示与现在事实相反的假设时, 句型为 “If + 一般过去时, 主语 + should / would / might / could + 原形 V”

要特别注意的是，If 句中的动词为过去式，如果所使用的是 be 动词，一律用 were。例如：

If I were you, I would accept his suggestions.

（如果我是你，我就会接受他的建议。）

## 2. 与过去事实相反

If + 过去完成时，主语 + would + have p.p.

表示与过去的事实相反的假设时，句型为 "If + had + p.p., 主语 + should / would / might / could + have + p.p." 例如：

If you had been here yesterday, you would have seen her.

（如果你昨天在这里，就能见到他了。）

## 3. 与未来事实相反

3-1. 几乎不可能发生 → If + 一般过去时，主语 would + 原形 V

基本上与与现在事实相反的虚拟语气句型一样，句型为 "If + 一般过去时，主语 + should / would / might / could + 原形 V"，一样特别注意 If 句中的 be 动词，一律用 were。例如：

If the sun were to disappear, you would win the jackpot. （如果太阳消失不见，那你会赢得大奖。）→ 太阳不可能不见，所以你不可能赢得大奖

3-2. 有“万一”的含意 → If + should + 原形 V, 主语 + should + 原形 V

如果与未来事实相反的假设句中，带有“万一”或“可能发生”的含意，那么句型请使用 "If + should + 原形 V, 主要句子用 should (shall) / would (will) / might (may) / could (can) + 原形 V"。例如：

If Mike would come tomorrow, I will bring him to the best restaurant I have ever been.

（如果迈克明天来的话，那我就带他去我去过最好的餐厅。）→ 迈克明天可能会来，所以我可能会带他去最好的餐厅

# 02 延伸用法，事半功倍！

Learning Plus!

虚拟语气的其他形式：

1. 省略 if 的虚拟语气句型

句型 1 "Were + 主语, ..."



Were I young, I would learn English well.

(如果我还年轻, 我要好好学英语。)

句型 2 “Had + 主语 P.P., ...”

Had you been here earlier, you would have seen him.

(你要是早点到这儿, 你就见到他了。)

句型 3 (Should + 主语 + 原形 V, ...)

Should that be true, the contract would be canceled.

(如果那是真的, 合约就该取消。)

## 2. 表示“但愿”的虚拟语气句型

常使用 “I wish (that) / If only / Would that” 等开头,

a) 后面接 were 或者动词过去式, 以表示 “目前无法实现的愿望”。

b) 后面接过去完成时, 表示 “过去不能实现的愿望”。

I wish that I didn't have to go to work today. (我今天要能不上班就好了。)

→ 目前无法实现的愿望

Would that she could see her son now!

(要是她现在能看到她的儿子就好了!) → 目前无法实现的愿望

If only I knew her address. (我当时要是知道她的地址就好了。)

→ 过去无法实现的愿望

I wish I hadn't said that. (真希望我当时没有说那些。)

→ 过去无法实现的愿望

# 03 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. If you should happen to see him, please give him my regards.

如果你万一见到他, 请代我向他致敬。

02. If the sun were to disappear, what would the earth be like?

万一太阳消失了, 地球会变成什么样呢?

03. If I were free now, I might to call on him.

如果我有时间，我可能去看他了。

04. If you were in my shoes, what would you do?

如果你站在我的立场，你会怎么做？

05. If only she came here earlier.

如果她当时可以早点来就好了。

06. I could have finished the task if I had had more time.

如果当时我有多一点时间，我就能完成这项任务。

07. Had he not apologized to her, she would not have forgiven him.

要不是他道歉，她那时是不会原谅他的。

08. If I had worked hard when young, I would be well off now.

如果我年轻时多努力一点，现在就能过得舒服些。

## 04 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. He described the town as if he \_\_\_\_\_ it himself.

☐ A had seen

☐ B has seen

☐ C saw

☐ D sees

02. He's working hard for fear that he \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ A should fall behind

☐ B fell behind

☐ C may fall behind

☐ D would fall behind

03. Your advice that \_\_\_\_\_ till next week is reasonable.

☐ A she waits

☐ B she wait

☐ C wait she

☐ D she waited

04. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being.

☐ A do

☐ B didn't do

☐ C don't

☐ D didn't

05. He was very busy yesterday, otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting.  
 A would come                      B came  
 C would have come                D had come
06. If you had told me this information, I \_\_\_\_\_ some suggestions for you.  
 A might make                      B would made  
 C might have made                D hade made
07. I hadn't expected James to apologize but I had hoped \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A him calling me                  B that he would call me  
 C him to call me                    D that he call me
08. It's high time they \_\_\_\_\_ this road.  
 A mend                              B mended  
 C must have mended                D will mend

正确答案及题目译文：

01. A 他描述得好像是他亲眼看到过那个城市似的。
02. A 他努力工作，担心自己进度落后。
03. B 你建议她等到下个礼拜是合理的。
04. B 我宁愿你暂时什么事都别做。
05. C 他昨天非常忙碌，要不然他就赶上会议了。
06. B 如果你早点让我知道这个消息，我就可以给你一点建议。
07. B 我没有期待詹姆斯跟我道歉，但是我希望他可以打电话给我。
08. B 也该是他们修补这条路的时候了。



Step 3 该如何使用进阶的句子?

## 16 被动语态

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！

Grammar Mind Mapping

- 1.1 及物动词→ be+p.p.
- 1.2 助动词→助动词+ be + p.p.
- 1.3 双宾语→间接宾语变主语，直接主语变保留宾语
- 1.4 宾语+宾语补语→主动结构的宾语变成被动结构的主语，宾语补语不变

#### 1. 被动语态的构成

### 被动语态

#### 2. 被动语态的基本用法

- 2.1 动作的执行者没必要提出，可被省略时
- 2.2 出于礼貌或婉转希望省略执行者时
- 2.3 强调动作的承受者时
- 2.4 为了文章通顺
- 2.5 正式的通告

英语中有两种语态：主动语态和被动语态。主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者。被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者，即行为动作的物件。

## 1. 被动语态的构成

## 1-1. 及物动词→ would be+p.p.

英语语法中仅有及物动词有被动形式。其句型结构为“be + 及物动词（或短语）的过去分词”。另外，被动语态可以使用于各种时态，例如：

现在式：My mother is not easily deceived.（我妈妈不是容易上当受骗的。）

现在式：A new house was built in this town.（有一栋新房子盖在这个城市里。）

一般将来时：She will be succeeded to win this case.（这个案子她将会胜诉。）

一般过去将来时：Somebody said that this museum would be built in 5 months.  
（有人说这栋博物馆五个月内可以盖完。）

过去进行时：All the injured visitors were being taken care of by the nurses.  
（所有受伤的游客都有护士在照顾着。）

现在进行时：This subject is being discussed by all the department directors in company now.（所有的公司部门主管都在讨论这个话题。）

现在完成时：The laundry has been done.（衣服已经都洗好了。）

## 1-2. 助动词→助动词 + be + p.p.

当句中动词为助动词型态时，转变为被动语态的句型结构为“助动词 + be + p.p.”，例如：

All the players could be found in the gym.（所有的选手都可以在体育馆中被找到。）

## 1-3. 双宾语→间接宾语变主语，直接主语变保留宾语

一个句型结构中，若是存在两个宾语，而需将句中的动词改为被动语态时，通常是将间接宾语往前拉作主语，直接宾语变成了保留宾语。如果主动结构中的直接宾语变为被动结构中的主语，这时在间接宾语前要加介词 to（可省去）或 for（不可省）。例如：

The doctor gave me a prescription.

= I was given a prescription by the doctor.

= A prescription was given to me by the doctor.

（医生帮我开了一张处方笺。）

Mickey brought me a gift.

= I was brought a gift by Mickey.  
 = A gift was brought for me by Mickey.  
 (米奇带了一份礼物给我。)

- 1-4. 宾语+宾语补语→主动结构的宾语变成被动结构的主语，宾语补语不变：  
 当句型中含有“宾语和宾语补语”的结构时，要转换为被动语态时，只需将主动结构中的宾语变为被动结构中的主语，宾语补语不变。例如：

I painted all the wall purple.  
 = All the walls are painted purple by me. (所有的墙壁都被漆成紫色)

## 2. 被动语态的基本用法

- 2-1. 动作的执行人没必要提出，可被省略时

This plan will be finished next week. (这项计划下周就会完成。)

Father told us that a swimming pool is being built in our town.  
 (爸爸告诉我们镇上正在建造一座游泳池。)

- 2-2. 出于礼貌或婉转希望省略执行者时

Johnny was considered to be a natural leader.  
 (强尼被认为是一个天生的领导者。)

My brother is said to be a super star in the future.  
 (有人说我弟弟日后会成为一个大明星。)

- 2-3. 强调动作的承受者时

All the desks are cleaned by me this morning.  
 (所有的桌子我今天早上都打扫过了。)

Some of the people in your office are asked to speak with lower voice.  
 (你们办公室有些人被要求说话小声一点。)

- 2-4. 为了文章通顺

The president appeared, and was warmly applauded by the citizens.



(当总统出现时, 市民们给予热烈的掌声。)

2-5. 正式的通告:

Passengers are requested to remain seated until the aircraft comes to a complete stop. (飞机停稳前, 请乘客不要离开座位。)

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. Paper was first made in China.

纸张首先在中国被制作出来。

02. He was laughed at by all people.

他被所有人嘲笑。

03. It's said that this book has been translated into several languages.

据说这本书被翻译成多种语言。

04. Such questions are settled by us.

这样的问题被我们解决了。

05. I was frightened by his ghost story.

我被他的鬼故事吓到了。

06. A new public school will be built up in this town.

一座新的公立学校将被建在这座城镇里。

07. Plastic bags full of rubbish have been piled in streets.

人们把装满垃圾的塑料袋堆放在街上。

08. You will be asked a lot of strange questions.

他们将会问你许多怪问题。

09. It is generally considered impolite to ask one's age, salary, marriage, etc.

问别人的年龄、薪水、婚姻状况等通常被认为是不礼貌的。

10. I was given ten minutes to decide whether I should accept the offer.

我有两分钟来决定是否接受帮助。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请把下列句子改写成被动语态。

01. A car knocked him down yesterday.

---

02. Two doctors and ten nurses make up the medical team.

---

03. Everybody likes this song.

---

04. They have sold out all the red lanterns.

---

05. He made the poor girl work 12 hours a day.

---

06. Children saw the movie last week.

---

07. We shouldn't allow young children to drive.

---

08. It is thought that he is coming.

---

09. It is supposed that the ship has been sunk.

---

10. You mustn't throw away the old books.

---

正确答案及题目译文：

01. He was knocked down by a car yesterday.

02. The medical team is made up of two doctors and ten nurses.

03. This song is liked by everybody.

04. All the red lanterns have been sold out.

05. The poor girl was made to work 12 hours a day.

06. The movie was seen by children last week.

07. Young children should not be allowed to drive.

08. He is thought to be coming.

09. The ship is supposed to have been sunk.

10. The old books should not be thrown away.

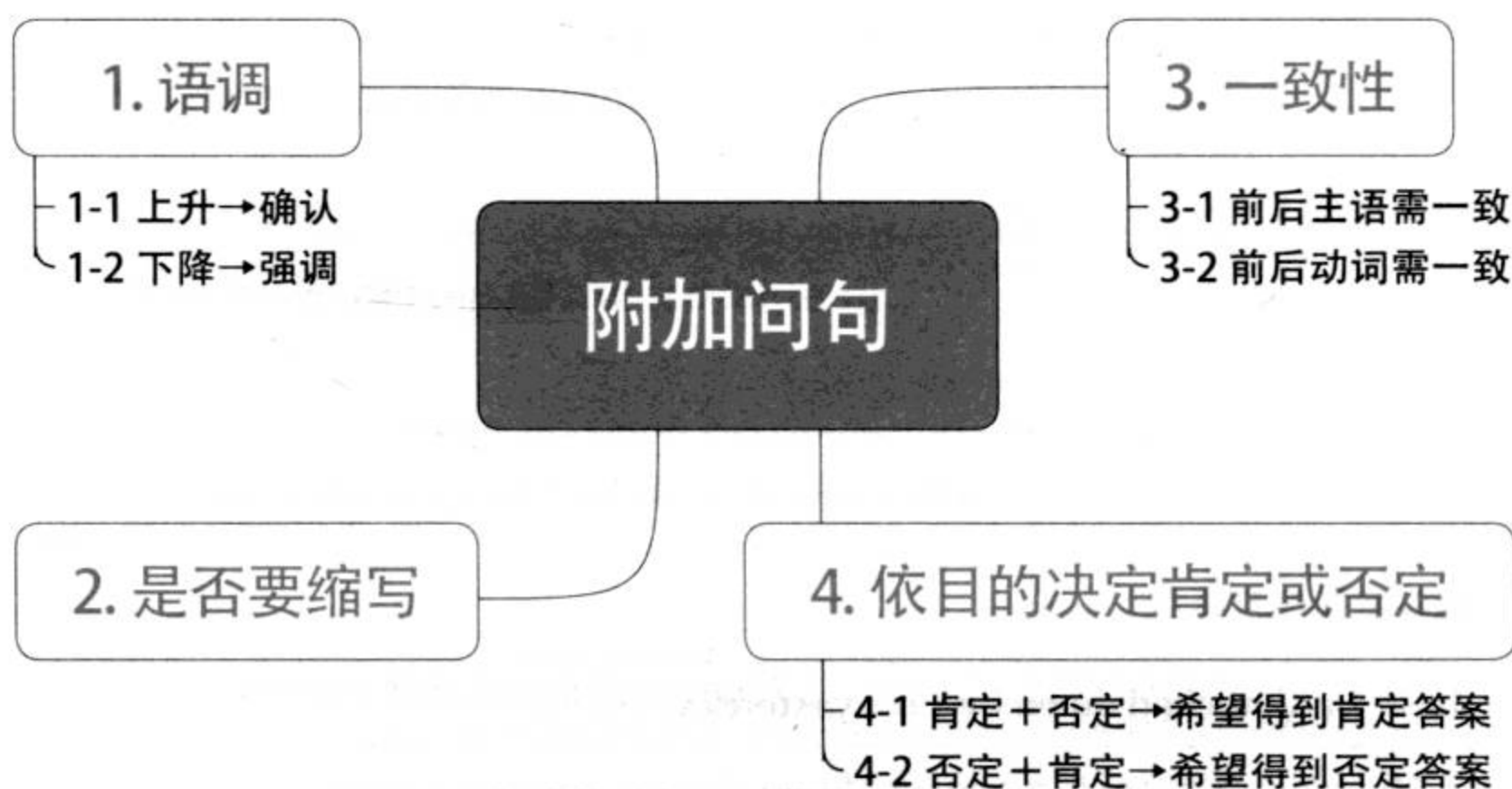


Step 3 该如何使用进阶的句子?

## 17 附加问句

### 01 图解语法, 一看就会!

Grammar Mind Mapping



#### 1. 语调

附加用句为接在陈述句后的简短问句, 用意在加强语意或确认信息内容。

1-1. 语调上升→确认讯息→表示发话者不确定信息内容, 希望对方给予意见。

Mandy will come here today, will she? (曼蒂今天会过来, 对吧?)  
→ 希望“确认”曼蒂今天“会”过来这里。

1-2. 语调下降→强调信息→用于发话者意图强调说明之信息。

Sandy is such a nice girl, isn't she? 珊蒂真是个好女孩, 不是吗?

→表示“强调”珊蒂“是”个好女孩。

## 2. 否定要缩写

附加问句若为否定句(含有 not), 则通常以缩写形式出现。

✗ Sam is a student, is not he?

○ Sam is a student, isn't he?

## 3. 一致性

### 3-1. 前后主语需一致

附加问句的主语需与前面陈述句中的主语一致, 且附加问句中的主语需使用与陈述句中相符的人称代名词。

Michael is your brother, isn't he? 迈克是你哥哥, 对吗?

### 3-2. 前后动词需一致

附加问句中的时态需与陈述句保持一致。

陈述句使用 be 动词, 附加问句则使用 am / are / is、am not / aren't / isn't ;

陈述句使用一般现在时, 附加问句则使用 do, did, does ;

陈述句使用一般过去时, 附加问句则使用 did ;

陈述句使用完成时, 附加问句则使用 have / has、haven't / hasn't ;

Grandpa likes gardening, doesn't he? 爷爷喜欢园艺, 不是吗?

Ms. Jackson has been to Paris, hasn't she? 杰克森小姐去过巴黎, 不是吗?

## 4. 依目的决定肯定或否定

说话者可以依其目的, 来决定陈述句为肯定句或否定句。

### 4-1. 肯定(陈述句) + 否定(附加问句) → 希望得到肯定答案

You love your children, don't you? 你爱你的孩子, 不是吗?

Yes, I do. 是的, 我爱。

4-2. 否定（陈述句）+肯定（附加问句）→希望得到否定的答案。

Your teacher **didn't** tell you to cheat, **did** she? (老师没叫你作弊，对吧?)

No, she **didn't**. (对的，她没有。)

## 02 延伸用法，事半功倍！

Learning Plus!

### 1. 祈使句

#### 1-1. 建议或请求：

Let's go to the movies, shall we? (我们一起去看电影，好吗?)

Let's not talk about it, all right? (别再谈这件事了，好吗?)

Let me take a look at this, will you? (让我看看，可以吗?)

#### 1-2. 命令：

Keep quiet, will you? (保持安静，好吗?)

#### 1-3. 邀请：

Have a seat, won't you? (坐下来，好吗?)

### 2. there 为首的陈述句

There are many Japanese restaurants near here, aren't there?

(这附近有许多日本餐馆，不是吗?)

## 03 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. Steven is the smartest boy in your class, isn't he?

史蒂芬是你班上最聪明的男生，对吗?

02. You will not invite him to the party, will you?

你不会邀请他来派对，对吧?

03. I don't have to go with you, do I?

我不必跟你一起去，对吧?



04. Joanna can baby-sit the kids tonight, can't she?  
乔安娜今晚可以帮忙带小孩, 对不对?
- 
05. You have done your homework, haven't you?  
你们已经把作业做完了, 不是吗?
- 
06. Peter was a pilot, wasn't he?  
彼得曾经是个飞行员, 对不对?
- 
07. I am the most beautiful woman in the world, am I not?  
我是世上最美丽的女人, 对不对?
- 
08. We must do it by ourselves, mustn't we?  
我们必须自己做这件事, 对吗?
- 
09. Calm down, will you?  
冷静下来, 好吗?
- 
10. There isn't too much water left in the reservoir, is there?  
水库里没有剩下多少水了, 是吗?
- 

## 04 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出题目中附加问句相对应的标准答案。

01. They hadn't have chance to talk, had they ?  
☐ A No, they hadn't.      ☐ B Yes, they did.
02. You don't have to work late today, do you ?  
☐ A No, I don't.      ☐ B Yes, we have.
03. We have met before, haven't we ?  
☐ A Yes, we haven't.      ☐ B Yes, we have.
04. They didn't recognize who you are, did they ?  
☐ A No, they didn't.      ☐ B No, they did.

05. He will never cheat on me, will he ?  
**A** No, he won't. **B** Yes, he won't.
06. You are my best friend, aren't you ?  
**A** Yes, you are. **B** Yes, I am.
07. They fell in love with each other at first sight, didn't they ?  
**A** Yes, they did. **B** No, they have.
08. You are invited to Jimmy's birthday party, aren't you ?  
**A** No, I didn't. **B** Yes, I am.
09. Mr. and Mrs. Lin have already gone to the airport, haven't they ?  
**A** Yes, they have. **B** Yes, they did.
10. It is a beautiful day, isn't it ?  
**A** Yes, it is. **B** Yes, it isn't.

正确答案及题目译文：

01. **A** 他们没有任何机会谈话，对吗？ / 是的，他们没有。

02. **A** 你今天不用加班，对吧？ / 是的，我不用。

03. **B** 我们以前曾经见过，对吗？ / 是的，我们见过。

04. **A** 他们没认出来你是谁，对吗？ / 是的，他们没有。

05. **A** 他永远不会欺骗我，对吗？ / 是的，他不会。

06. **B** 你是我最好的朋友，对吗？ / 是的，我是。

07. **A** 他们两个是一见钟情，对吗？ / 是的，他们是。

08. **B** 你受邀参加 Jimmy 的生日派对，对吗？ / 是的，我是。

09. **A** 林氏夫妇已经去机场了，对吗？ / 是的，他们去了。

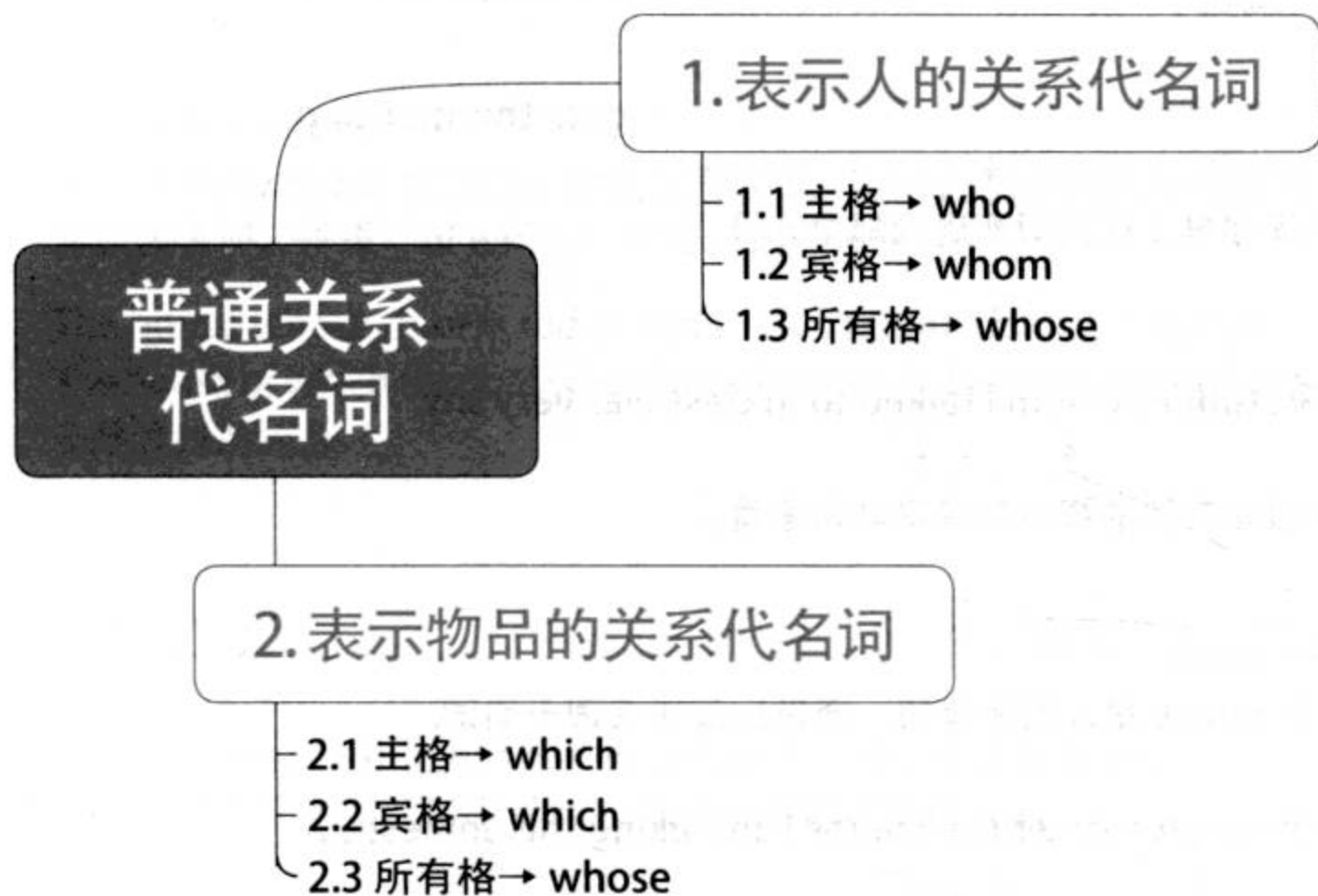
10. **A** 这真是美好的一天，对吗？ / 是的，这是。

Step 3 该如何使用进阶的句子?

## 18 关系代名词

### 01 图解语法, 一看就会!

Grammar Mind Mapping



关系代名词是指兼具代名词与连词双重作用的代名词。关系代名词所代表的名词或代名词就做“先行词”，句中该用何种代名词视先行词的种类而定。关系代名词的人称、格、数应该与先行词一致。

### Part 1. 普通关系代名词?

#### 1. 表示人的代名词

表示人的关系代名词有 who, whom, whose, 除了前面有介词的宾格 whom 之外, who 与 whom 均可用 that 代替。



## 1-1. 主格→ who

关系代名词 who 是人的主格，通常后面会直接接一个动作。例如：

The boy who lives near the park is my new classmate.

↑      ↑  
(住在公园旁边的那个男孩是我新同学。)

## 1-2. 宾格→ whom

关系代名词 whom 是人的宾格，通常后面会接主语+动词，有时会有介词，要视情况而定。例如：

I don't know the man whom you met at the gate this morning.

↑      ↑  
(我不认识你早上在门口遇到的那个人。)

The new student whom I talked to in class was very shy.

↑      ↑  
(和我在教室交谈的那位新同学非常害羞。)

## 1-3. 所有格→ whose

关系代名词 whose 是人的所有格，通常后面接名词+动词。

That is the professor whose course I am taking this semester.

↑      ↑  
(就是那个教授，我这个学期要听他的课。)

## 2. 表示物品的代名词

表示物的关系代名词有 which, whose。其中 which 可用 that 代替，但 which 前面有介词时除外。

## 2-1. 主格→ which

关系代名词 which 是用来代替没有生命的先行词，如果 which 后面接的是动词，它就是主格；

The jacket which is on the desk is mine. (桌上的那件夹克是我的。) → 主格

## 2-2. 宾格 → which

如果 which 后面接的是主语 + 动词，它就是宾格。

The information which I found on the Internet helped me a lot.

(我在网上找的那些资讯帮了我很多。) → 宾格

## 2-3. 所有格 → whose

关系代名词 whose 也可以表示物当所有格，whose 前面的先行词接事物或动物，后面接名词，可用 “of which” 代替，但不可用 that。

The house whose door is red is mine. (门是红色的那栋房子是我的。)

The house of which the roof was painted red is my mother's. (那栋屋顶漆成红色的屋子是我妈妈的。)

# Part 2 表示人和物品的关系代名词 — that

关系代名词 that 既可以表示人又可以表示物，可以做主格或宾格，不能为所有格。有些场合关系代名词只能用 that，有的场合则不能用 that。

## 1. 只能用关系代名词 that 的场合

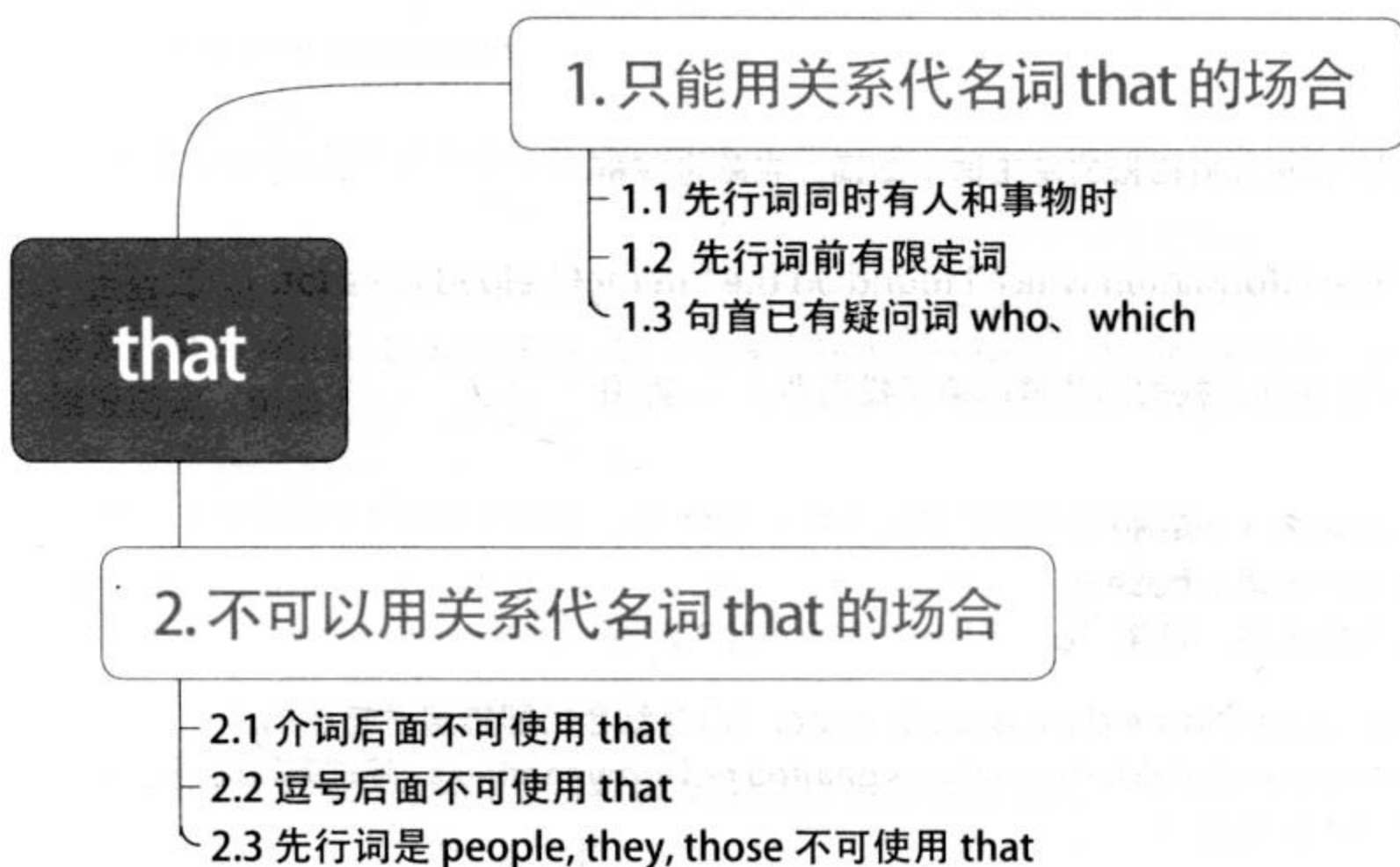
### 1-1. 先行词同时有人和事物时，例如：

I know the man and his dog that were dead in the accident. (我认识在事故中失去生命的那个人和他的狗。)

### 1-2. 先行词前有限定词，如最高级，序数词，the only, the same, the very, any, no, all, every 等。

This is the greatest invent that I have ever seen. (这是我见过的最伟大的发明。)

He is the first student that goes into the classroom every day. (他是每天第一个到教室的学生。)



He is the only student that can answer the question.

(他是唯一能回答这个问题的学生。)

1-3. 句首已有疑问词 who、which, 避免重复。

Who is the boy that is standing over there? (站在那儿的那个男生是谁?)

## 2. 不能用关系代名词 that 的场合

2-1. 介词后面不可使用关系代名词 that, 例如:

This is the house in which he lives. (这是他住的房子。)

2-2. 逗号后面不可使用关系代名词 that, 例如:

My elder sister, who is in Paris, will come back tomorrow.

(我那个住在巴黎的姐姐明天就会回来。) → 我只有一个姐姐, 而且住在巴黎。

关系代名词与先行词之间有逗号, 表示先行词具有唯一性; 关系代名词和先行词之间无逗号, 表示不止一个。



My elder sister who is in Paris will come back tomorrow. (我住在巴黎的姐姐, 明天就会回来。) → 我不止有一个姐姐, 其他姐姐可能在其他地方。

2-3. 先行词是 people, they, those 不可使用关系代名词 that。例如：

People who can use their time well are happy. (会善用时间的人是快乐的。)

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. The toy which belongs to me disappeared.

那个属于我的玩具不见了。

02. I have a friend whose father is an artist.

我有一位朋友, 他的爸爸是艺术家。

03. The lady whom you talked to is my teacher.

跟你说话的那位女士是我老师。

04. Amy enjoys the food which her mother cooks.

艾米喜欢她妈妈做的食物。

05. I like the boy who has short hair.

我喜欢留短发的那位男孩。

06. The man about whom you were talking is my husband.

你在谈论的那个人是我的丈夫。

07. The book of which the cover is green is mine.

那本封面是绿色的书是我的。

08. Take any book that you like.

碰到喜欢的书, 你就带走。

09. He is the first boy that came this morning.

他是今天早上最先到的男孩。

10. He borrowed a book whose author is a young lady.  
他借的那本书的作者是一位年轻小姐。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请以适当的关系代名词填入题目空格中。

01. The kid and his cat \_\_\_\_\_ are in the garden are cute.
02. That is the house in \_\_\_\_\_ they live.
03. Do you know the girl \_\_\_\_\_ is crossing the street?
04. This is the boy \_\_\_\_\_ I met at the station yesterday
05. These are the photographs \_\_\_\_\_ I took last month.
06. I've become good friends with several of the people \_\_\_\_\_ I met in my English class.
07. The box \_\_\_\_\_ I mailed to my sister was heavy.
08. The man \_\_\_\_\_ answered the phone was polite.

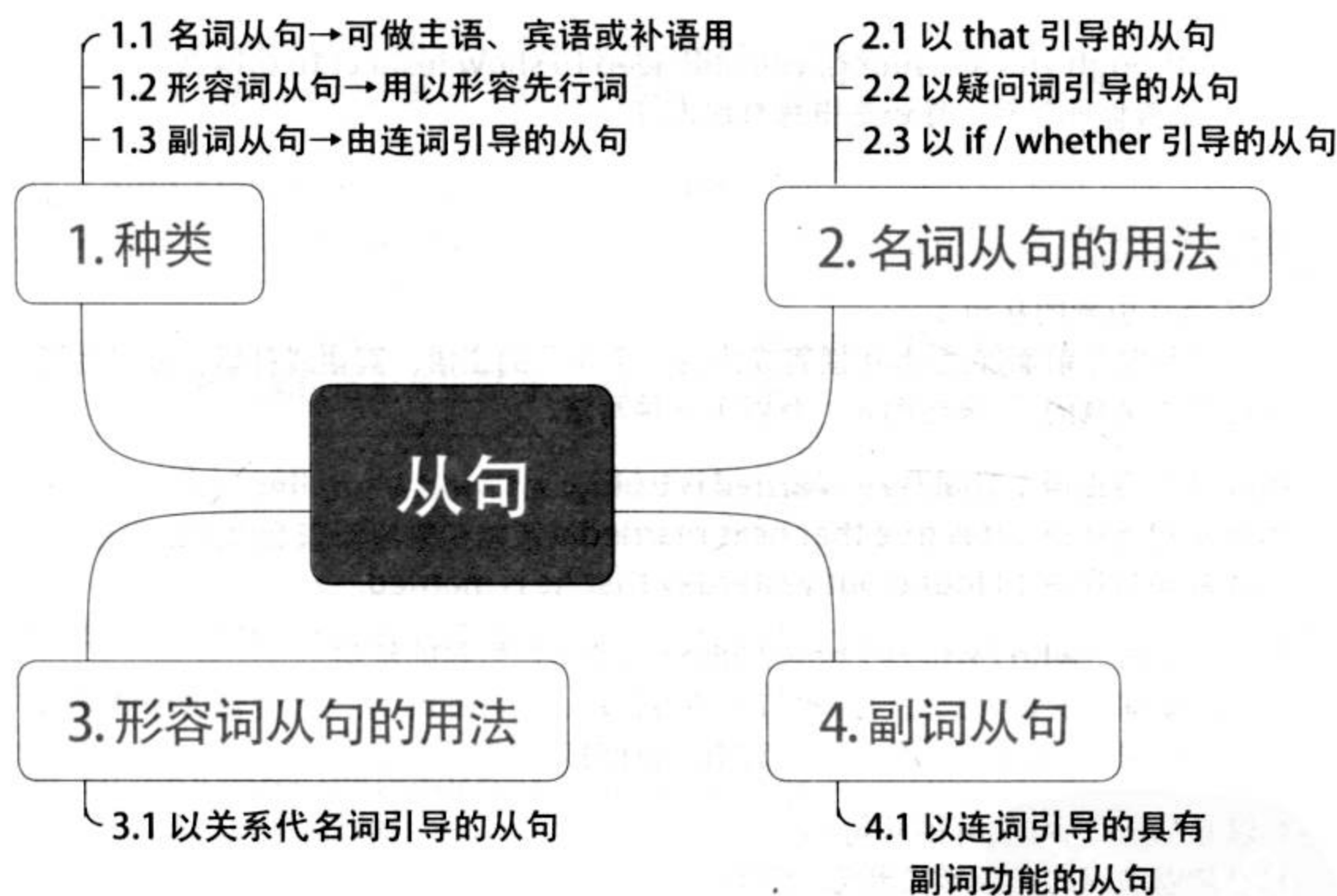
正确答案及题目译文：

01. that	花园里的小孩和他的猫很可爱。
02. which	那是他们住的房子。
03. who	你知道那个正在过马路的女孩是谁吗？
04. whom	这是我昨天在车站遇到的那个男孩。
05. which	这是我昨晚拍的照片。
06. whom	我与在英语课堂遇到的几个人成了好朋友。
07. which	我邮寄给我妹妹的箱子很重。
08. who	接电话那个人很有礼貌。

# 19 从句 (名词从句、形容词从句、副词从句……)

## 01 图解语法, 一看就会!

Grammar Mind Mapping



### 1. 从句的种类

1-1. 名词从句→可做主语、宾语或补语用

What you eat is what you are. (你吃什么你就是什么。)

主语

主语补语



He said that he is the only boy in his class. (他说他是班上唯一的男生。)

宾语

### 1-2. 形容词从句→用以形容先行词

I like the man who cares about his family. (我喜欢在乎家庭的男人。)



1-3. 副词从句→由连词引导的从句。有表示时间、地点、原因等的副词功能。

**Although you are young, you still need to show respect to others.**

(就算你还年轻，你还是得尊重别人。)

## 2. 名词从句的用法

### 2-1. 以 that 引导的从句：

一个完整句子前面加上 **that** 使其成为另一个句子的主语、宾语或补语。以“他已婚这件事是真的。”来当例句，有以下三种写法。

**that 从句当主语** : That he is married is true.

that 从句当补语 : It is true that he is married.

that 从句当宾语 : I found out yesterday that he is married.

### 2-2. 以疑问词 (who / where / how / when / what) 引导的从句:

通常以动词的宾语形式出现，例如：I'll tell you where he is. (我会告诉你他在哪里。) → Where is he? 作为 tell 的宾语，以间接问句方式出现。

### 2-3. 以 if / whether 引导的从句：

也经常以动词的宾语形式出现，例如：

Do you know if / whether he's available now? (你知道他现在是否有空吗?) → if / whether... 从句作为 know 的宾语, 以间接问句方式出现。

### 3. 形容词从句的用法

### 3-1. 以关系代名词 (who / which / that / whom / whose) 引导的从句:

The woman who is on the phone is my supervisor. (那个讲电话的女人是我的主管。)

关系代名词 who 引导出的从句用来修饰前面的名词 the woman。

#### 4. 副词从句的用法

##### 4-1. 以连词引导的具有副词功能的从句：

We were shocked when he told us the truth. (当他告诉我们实情时，我们很震惊。) → 连词 when 引导出表示时间的副词从句。

He doesn't like school because he has no friends there. (他因为没有朋友而不喜欢学校。) → 连词 because 引导出表示原因的副词从句。

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

### 01. That Jack passed all his exams is unbelievable.

杰克通过所有的考试真是令人无法相信。

### 02. I didn't know that you two are friends.

我不知道你们两个是朋友。

### 03. It is exciting that we're going to have dinner with the super star.

我们将要和那位巨星共进晚餐，真是令人兴奋。

### 04. He didn't tell me whom he will invite to the party.

他没跟我说会邀请谁来参加派对。

### 05. I don't know what you are talking about.

我不知道你在讲什么。

### 06. No one cares whether he's coming or not.

没人关心他要不要来。

### 07. The car which he is driving was a gift from his parents.

他现在开的那辆车是他父母送的礼物。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

依句意填入正确的连词

(that、which、where、how、what、who、whether、before 等)。

01. \_\_\_\_\_ he wants to be a woman terrified his parents.
02. The man \_\_\_\_\_ is talking to Andy is an old friend of mine.
03. I have no idea \_\_\_\_\_ I should believe him or not.
04. We are all curious to know \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. and Mrs. Brown met each other.
05. The farm \_\_\_\_\_ we're visiting tomorrow is a famous tourist spot here.
06. It is incredible \_\_\_\_\_ a man like him would be the hero of his country.
07. Please show me the pictures \_\_\_\_\_ you took during your trip to London.
08. You are lucky to find out \_\_\_\_\_ he is nothing but a liar before you marry him.

正确答案及题目译文：

01. That	他想要变成女人这件事吓坏了他的父母。
02. who	在跟安迪讲话的那个人是我的一个老朋友。
03. whether	我不知道我究竟该不该相信他。
04. how	我们都很好奇，究竟布朗夫妇是怎么认识的。
05. which	我们明天要去参观的农场是这里非常有名的景点。
06. that	一个像他这样的男人会成为人民英雄，真是一件令人难以置信的事。
07. which / that	请让我看看你去伦敦旅游时拍的照片。
08. that	你能在嫁给他之前就发现他什么都不是，只是个骗子，是值得庆幸的。



Step 3 该如何使用进阶的句子？

## 20 倒装句

### 01 图解语法，一看就会！ Grammar Mind Mapping

1.1 将整个谓语提到主语之前

#### 1. 句型构成

### 全部倒装

#### 2. 使用时机

- 2.1 以 here, there, now, then, out, in, up, down, off, away 等方向性副词开头的句子
- 2.2 当表示地点的介词短语放在句首
- 2.3 主语补语提到句首需用全部倒装
- 2.4 以 so, nor, neither 开头的句子

英语句子通常有两种语序：一种是自然语序，一种是倒装语序。将谓语的一部分或全部置于主语之前的语序叫做倒装语序。

# Part 1 全部倒装

## 1. 句型构成

1-1 将整个谓语提到主语之前。例如：

You must on no condition go to Italy alone.

→ On no condition must you go Italy alone.

(不管怎样你都必须自己去意大利。)

## 2. 使用时机

2-1. 以 here, there, now, then, out, in, up, down, off, away 等方向性副词开头的句子, 且句子主语是名词时, 句子用完全倒装。例如：

Here comes the bus. (公共汽车来了。)

### TIPS!

但如果主语是代词时, 不能用倒装。

例如：Here it is.

2-2. 当表示地点的介词短语放在句首, 要倒装。用来强调语气, 例如：on the wall, under the tree, in front of the house, in the middle of the room 等。

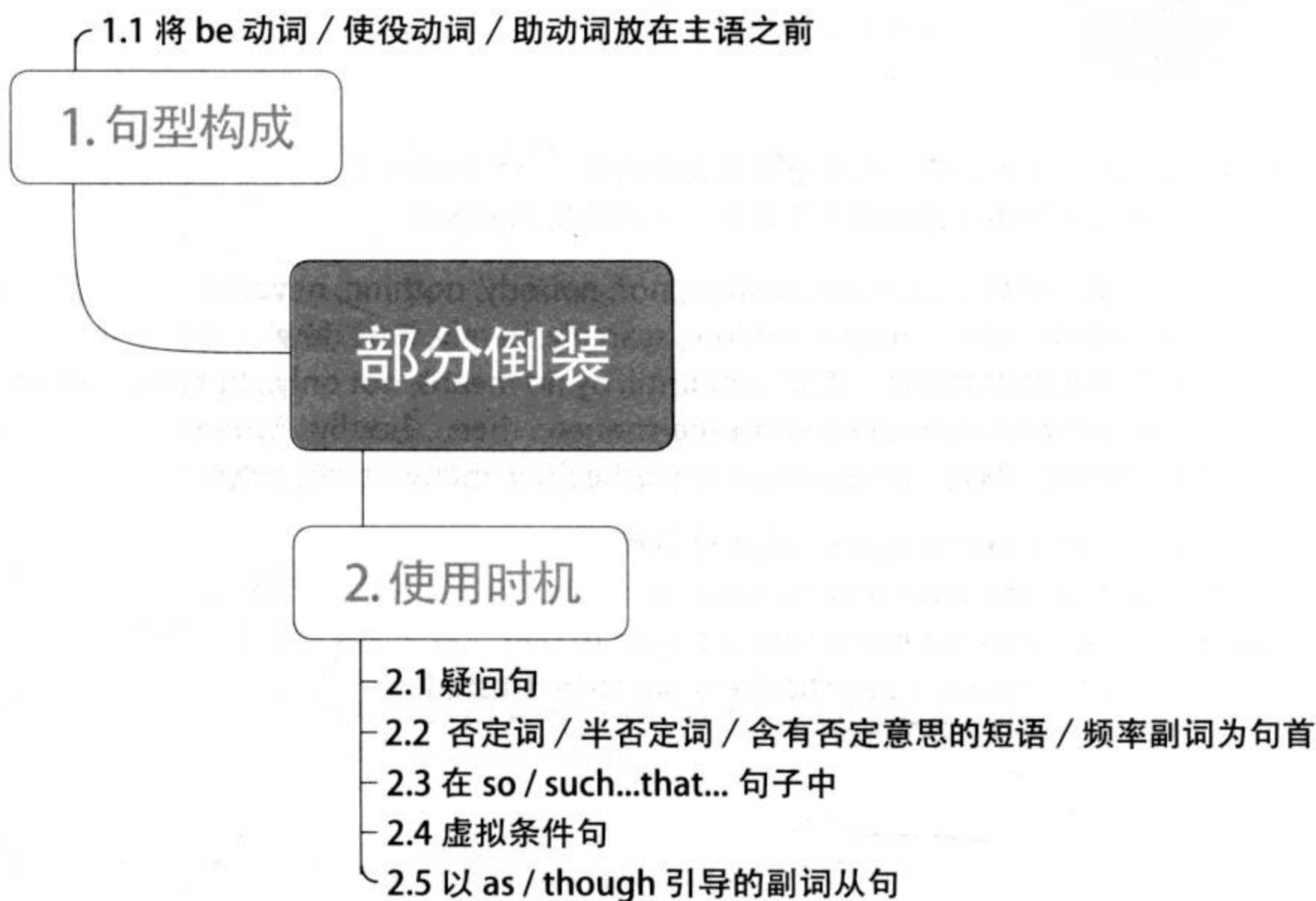
At the foot of the hill lies a small river. (山脚下有一条小河。)

2-3. 主语补语提到句首需用全部倒装。此句型常常是因为主语有较长修饰语, 故以倒装呈现。

Among the goods are flowers, candies, and toys. (这些商品中有花, 糖果, 玩具。)

2-4. 以 so, nor, neither 开头的句子。以 so, nor, neither 开头的句子使用倒装, 用来表示前句所说的内容也适合另外的人或物。

He has been to London, so have I. (他去伦敦了, 我也去了。)



## Part 2 部分倒装

### 1. 句型构成

1-1. 将 be 动词 / 使役动词 / 助动词放在主语之前

Not until last night did Sammy changed her mind. (直到昨天晚上, 珊米才改变了主意。)

### 2. 使用时机

2-1. 疑问句：疑问句中，一般须用部分倒装，例如：

What do you think about the movie? (你认为这场电影怎么样?)



**TIPS!**

但当对句子的主语提问时，一般不用倒装语序。例如：

**What happened last night?**

(昨天晚上发生了什么事?)

## 2-2. 否定词 / 半否定词 / 含有否定意思的短语 / 频率副词为句首：

句中若以下列单词或短语为句首时，一般须用部分倒装。

a) 否定词，例如：no, none, neither, nor, nobody, nothing, never

b) 半否定词，例如：hardly, seldom, scarcely, barely, little, few

c) 含有否定意思的短语，例如：not until, by no means, not only...but also..., in no way, neither... nor..., in no time, no sooner... than..., hardly... when...

d) 频率副词，例如：every day, every other day, many a time, often

Never shall I do this again. (我再也不那么做了。)

Hardly does she have time to listen to music. (她几乎没时间听音乐。)

No sooner had I got home than it began to rain. (我一到家就开始下雨了。)

Often have I heard it said that he is not to be trusted.

(我常常听说他是不可信的。)

## 2-3. 在 so / such... that... 句子中：

在 so / such... that... 的句子中，so 修饰形容词、副词或 such 修饰名词放句首时，句子须部分倒装。

So easy was the work that they finish it in a few days. (这个工作太容易了，所以他们在几天内就完成了。)

## 2-4. 虚拟条件句：

当虚拟条件句含有 were, should, had 时，可省略 if 并将 were, should, had 置于句首。例如：

Were I you, I would take the job. (我要是你，就接受那份工作。)

## 2-5. 以 as / though 引导的副词从句：

在以连词 as / though 引导的让步副词从句中，要用部分倒装。

Try as he would, he might fall again. (尽管他非常努力，但还是再次失败了。)

## 02 语法观念例句示范

Grammar Demonstration

01. There goes the bell.

铃响了。

---

02. Behind the counter she stood.

她站在柜台后。

---

03. Only in this way can you do it well.

只有这样你能做好。

---

04. Not only did he speak more correctly, but he spoke more easily.

他不仅讲得更正确，也讲得更不费劲了。

---

05. Never shall I forgive him.

我永远不会宽恕他。

---

06. So fast does light travel that we can hardly imagine its speed.

光速很快，我们几乎没法想像它的速度。

---

07. May you have a good journey.

祝你旅途愉快。

---

08. Child as he is, he knows more than you.

虽然他是孩子，但他懂的比你多。

---

09. Were I in school again, I would work harder.

如果我重新回到学校，我会加倍努力学习。

---

10. Every other day did he go to the hospital to see his father.

每隔一天他就去医院看望他父亲。

## 03 语法观念辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ than it began to rain heavily.  
☐ A the game began                      ☐ B has the game begun  
☐ C did the game begin                  ☐ D had the game begun
02. -Do you know Jim quarreled with his brother?  
 -I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A nor don't I care                      ☐ B nor do I care  
☐ C I don't care neither                  ☐ D I don't care also
03. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ he refuse the gift, he also severely criticized the sender.  
☐ A does                                      ☐ B has  
☐ C did                                        ☐ D didn't
04. Only when you have finished your homework \_\_\_\_\_ go home.  
☐ A can you                                  ☐ B would you  
☐ C you will                                 ☐ D you can
05. There \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A come they                              ☐ B they come  
☐ C they are come                         ☐ D they will come
06. -It was careless of you to have left your clothes outside all night.  
 -My God! \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A So did I                                  ☐ B So I did  
☐ C So were you                            ☐ D So did you
07. Look! There \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A comes the bus                        ☐ B the bus comes  
☐ C bus comes there                      ☐ D does the bus come
08. They thought that somewhere in the desert \_\_\_\_\_ an ancient city.  
☐ A being                                      ☐ B lay  
☐ C was there                                ☐ D lay there



09. \_\_\_\_\_ the plane.  
 A Flew down                      B Down flew  
 C Down was flying              D Down fly
10. Now \_\_\_\_\_ your turn to recite the text.  
 A there is                          B has come  
 C comes                            D will come

正确答案及题目译文：

01. D 比赛开始没多久就开始下雨了。
02. B 你知道吉姆跟他哥哥吵架了吗？ 我不知道也不在乎。
03. C 他不仅没有收下这份礼物，还严厉地斥责了送礼的人。
04. A 除非你完成你的作业，否则你不能回家。
05. B 他们来了。
06. B 你把衣服留在外面一整夜真是太不小心了！ 天啊！ 原来是我！
07. A 看！ 公共汽车来了！
08. B 他们认为沙漠中的某处有一个古老的城市。
09. B 飞机飞降落了。
10. C 现在轮到你背课文了。

单字陷阱.  
一字多义使用篇

单字陷阱.  
类义单字辨析篇

11. travel 与 trip
12. wait vs. expect
13. worth 与 worthy
14. occur vs. happen vs. take place
15. can v.s may vs. might
16. may be vs. maybe
17. during vs. while vs. when
18. prefer vs. rather

Day 23~30

# 个不能不 闪的语法 陷阱

01. 什么是英文语法?
02. 现在简单式 vs 过去简单式
03. 将来时
04. 现在进行式 vs. 过去进行式 vs. 未来进行式
05. 现在完成式 vs. 过去完成式 vs. 未来完成式
06. 完成进行式 (现在 vs. 过去 vs. 未来)

- 21 or/otherwise...
- 22 the + 比较级, the
- 23 I'm afraid (that)...
- 24 It is/was...that/who
- 25 It is obvious/clear
- 26 so/such...that...
- 27 You'd better (not)
- 28 Even though/if
- 29 have...do/doing/d
- 30 no matter + 疑问词

先搞懂概念与时态

该如何使用  
进阶的句子?

了解英文中  
关键的关键——字词

第一阶段: Day 01~07

# 20 个一定要学的句型



04 too... + (for sb./sth.) + to...

05 Let's/Let us...

06 Not everybody/both/all/every...

07 (It is) no wonder (that)...

08 It takes (sb.) + some time + to do sth.

09 What do you think of/about...?

10 ...as soon as...

12. 連接詞

13. 介係詞

14. 片語

基础观念马上建立!

第二阶段: Day 08~22

# 30个一定要学的句型

看到外国人  
也不用怕!

可以开始简单  
英语会话了!

11 unless...

12 whether...or...

13 Isn't (Don't/Can't/Won't...) + sb...?

14 What/How...!

15 Do/Would you mind...?

16 not only...but also...

17 It + adj + of/for sb. + to do...

18 Sb. do/does not think/suppose/believe that...

19 It's time (for sb.) to do sth....

20 so that...

词 (含比较级 & 最高级)

(含比较级 & 最高级)

动词 (可拆 vs. 不可拆)

动词 vs. 感官动词

词与不定词





Level 1 基础观念马上建立! (程度分级: 初中英语)

## 01 那里有个时髦的女孩!

There is a modern girl.

句型 There be (not) ...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

There be 句型用来表达“某时/某地存在有某人/某物”的语意,需特别注意的是,这个句型并不是用来表示“某地/人/物/时(拥有)某物/人。”其基本句型是 there be + 主语 + 其他补语。There 在此句型结构中的作用为“引导语”,本身并无词义,动词 be 是谓语,包含时态变化,也可与情态动词连用。动词 be 要和后面的主语取得单复数的一致。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

David: I am hungry, Mom. Can you give me some bread and milk?

Mom: Oh, Honey. I am so sorry. There isn't any milk in the fridge. I will buy some this afternoon. Do you want cookies? I have some left here.

David: Thanks, Mom. Cookies would be just fine.

大卫: 妈妈, 我好饿呀, 可以给我点面包和牛奶吗?

妈妈: 噢, 宝贝, 抱歉。冰箱里已经没有牛奶了。我今天下午会去买。你想吃饼干吗? 我这边还有一些。

大卫: 谢谢妈妈。饼干就可以了。

## 情境 2

Charles: How many students are there in your class, Ann?

Ann: There are fifty-six students in my class. There are thirty girls and twenty-six boys.

查理斯：安，你们班有多少位学生呀？

安：我们班一共有 56 位学生。分别有 30 位女生和 26 位男生。

## 情境 3

Robert: Do you know I am a huge fan of Beyoncé?

Amy: Really? I love her, too! And you know what? I think there are hundreds and thousands fans of Beyoncé in the world.

Robert: Oh, it's so true.

罗伯特：你知道我是碧昂斯的超级粉丝吗？

艾米：真的吗？我也非常喜欢她。而且你知道吗？我觉得这个世界上有成千上万的碧昂斯的粉丝。

罗伯特：噢！确实如此呀！

## 情境 4

Tom: Good afternoon, Mr. Johnson. May I ask you a question?

Mr. Johnson: Of course, Tom.

Tom: Do you know how many books are there in our library?

Mr. Johnson: We have the best library in this state. I think there might be over ten million books in our library.

汤姆：约翰逊先生，午安。我可以问您一个问题吗？

约翰逊先生：当然可以，汤姆。

汤姆：您知道我们的图书馆总共有多少藏书吗？

约翰逊先生：我们的图书馆是本州最好的图书馆。我想我们的图书馆应该有超过一千万册的藏书吧！

## 情境 5

Mike: Hi, Stephen. Have I told you that there is a beautiful lake just in front of my grandparents' house? And I always swim in that lake during the summer vacation.

Stephen: Wow! That sounds great. I want to swim in that lake, too.

Mike: Really? Would you like to visit my grandparents with me this summer vacation?

Stephen: Awesome! Thanks very much for inviting me. I think we will have a good summer vacation.

迈克：嗨，斯蒂芬！我有没有告诉你，我的祖父母家门前有一个很美的小湖。暑假期间我经常在那个湖里游泳。

斯蒂芬：哇！听起来好棒。我也很想在那座小湖里游泳。

迈克：真的吗？那你愿意我一起去拜访我祖父母，并且一起过暑假吗？

斯蒂芬：太棒了！非常谢谢你邀请我。我想我们这个暑假一定会很愉快。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 有很多人出席了会议。

---

02. 天上没有一丝云彩。

---

03. 一年有十二个月。

---

04. 我的家族里一共有十五位女性。

---

05. 瓶子里面没有水了。

---



## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

有（没有）足够的……来做……

There is (not) ... + enough ( + ...) + to do... 这个句型表示“有（没有）足够的……来做……”。enough 后面通常接名词，例如：

There is enough food for all of us.  
有足够我们所有人吃的食物。

There is not enough time to do so many things.  
没有足够多的时间做这么多的事。

There is enough money to buy that car.  
有足够的钱买那辆车。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. There were a lot of people present at the meeting.

02. There is not a single cloud in the sky.

03. There are twelve months in a year.

04. There are 15 women in my family.

05. There is not any water in the bottle.

Level 1 基础观念马上建立! (程度分级: 初中英语)

## 02 要不要喝点水啊?

Would you like some water?

句型

Would you like ...?

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

Would you like...? 句型是用来礼貌地询问对方的意愿、委婉地提出请求、建议或陈述个人的想法。肯定回答可以说 "Yes, please.", 否定回答可以说 "No, thanks."; Would you like...? 句型的回答也可以很灵活的, 要根据说话双方及不同的语境来决定。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

情境 1

Charles: Hi, Rose. Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?

Rose: I'd like to. But I am sorry. I have to prepare for my English exam tomorrow.

Charles: That's OK. We can go some other time.

查尔斯: 嗨, 萝丝, 你今晚要不要一起去看电影呀?

萝丝: 我很想去。但是很抱歉, 我得准备明天的英语考试。

查尔斯: 没关系的, 我们改天再去也可以。

情境 2

Waiter: Would you like another cup of coffee, sir?

Mr. David: Yes, please. Thank you.

Waiter: It's my pleasure!

服务生：先生，要不要再来一杯咖啡？  
 大卫先生：好的，来一杯吧，谢谢。  
 服务生：这是我的荣幸！

### 情境 3

Jessie: Would you mind turning down the TV, Ann? I am preparing for a test and need to concentrate.

Ann: Sure, I am sorry for disturbing you.

Jessie: It's OK. Thanks for your understanding.

杰西：安，你介意把电视音量调小一点吗？我在准备一个考试，需要专心一点。

安：没问题，对不起吵到你了。

杰西：没关系。谢谢你的体谅。

### 情境 4

Mom: Honey. Would you like some desserts?

Wendy: No, thank you, Mom. I am trying to lose weight now.

Mom: No problem, dear.

妈妈：亲爱的，要不要吃点心啊？

温蒂：不要了，谢谢妈妈。我正在减肥呢！

妈妈：没关系，亲爱的。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 你要不要四处看看？

02. 你要不要和我们一起去看海？



03. 你晚上要不要和我一起吃饭?

---

04. 你要不要来我们公司工作?

---

05. 你要不要喝点什么?

---

## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

那……如何? / 要不要……呢?

How about... / What about...? 那……如何? / 要不要……呢?

How about... / What about...? 都用来表示询问意见、情况或提出建议, 其中的 about 是介词, 后面常接名词、代名词或动名词。例如:

How about / What about another cup of tea?

要不要再喝一杯茶?

How about / What about going for a walk?

要不要出去散散步?

How about / What about going to the zoo with us?

要不要和我们一起去看动物园?

翻译练习正确答案:

01. Would you like to look around?

---

02. Would you like to go to the beach with us?

---

03. Would you like to have dinner with me tonight?

---

04. Would you like to work in our company?

---

05. Would you like something to drink?

---

Level 1 基础观念马上建立！（程度分级：初中英语）

## 03 你花了多长时间从车站走回家？

How long does it take you to walk home from the bus stop?

句型

How long / soon / often...?

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. How long...? 是用来提问“时间多长？”，主要是指一段时间的长短，例如：three days（三天）、two weeks（两周），常与连续性动词连用。
2. How soon...? 则表示“多久以后、还要多久？”，主要是强调从事件开始到结束有多久，例如：in two minutes（两分钟后）。
3. How often...? 则是用来提问某动作或状态发生的频率，回答通常是 always（总是）、usually（通常）、often（时常）、sometimes（有时候）、never（从不）、once a day（一天一次）、twice a month（一个月两次）等时间副词或片语。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Mike: Did you watch the NBA last night, Jack?

Jack: Of course. I never miss any NBA games.

Mike: But I missed the one last night. How long did the game last?

Jack: About two hours.

迈克：杰克，你看昨晚的 NBA 篮球赛了吗？

杰克：当然啦。我从来不错过任何一场 NBA 比赛。

迈克：但是我错过昨晚的那一场了。那场比赛持续了多久呢？

杰克：大约两个小时。

### 情境 2

Stephen : The 30th Olympic Games will be held in London in 2012.

Bill : Yeah, I know.

Stephen : But how often are the Olympic Games be held?

Bill : Every four years.

斯蒂芬：第三十届奥运会将于 2012 年在伦敦举行。

比尔：没错，我知道。

斯蒂芬：但是奥运会多久举行一次？

比尔：每四年。

---

### 情境 3

Manager : How soon will you finish the work, Peter?

Peter : At least in two days.

Manager : Please try to make it shorter, ok?

Peter : I will try my best to finish it ahead of time.

Manager : Thank you.

经理：彼得，你要多久才能完成这项工作？

彼得：至少要 2 天后。

经理：请试着用更短的时间完成，好吗？

彼得：我将尽力提前完成工作。

经理：谢谢。

---

### 情境 4

Wendy : How soon will your brother go to Hong Kong, Jessie?

Jessie : He will go to Hong Kong in three days.

温蒂：杰西，你哥哥还有多久要去香港呀？

汤杰西：他三天后会去香港。

---

### 情境 5

Frank : What do you think about KFC?

John : I think junk food is not good for our health, but it is very convenient.

Frank : How often do you have it?

John : About twice a month.



法兰克：你认为肯德基怎么样？

约翰：我觉得垃圾食品对身体没有好处，但是很方便。

法兰克：你多久吃一次呢？

约翰：大约一个月两次吧。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 工人们还要多久才能建好大楼？

02. 你每隔多久去拜访你的祖父母？

03. 你多久去一次电影院？

04. 你在美国待了多久？

05. 你要花多久时间才能解出那道数学题？

翻译练习正确答案：

01. How soon will the workers finish the building?

02. How often do you visit your grandparents?

03. How often do you go to the cinema?

04. How long did you stay in the United States?

05. How long will you spend working out that math question?

Level 1 基础观念马上建立! (程度分级: 初中英语)

04

他太胖了,  
所以不可能追到校花!  
He is too fat to get the school queen!

句型

too... + (for sb./sth.) + to...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

too... to... 句型表示“太……而不能……”的意思, 其基本结构是“too + 形容词 / 副词 + to + 动词原形”; 如果需要强调动作所指的对象时, 需要再加上一个逻辑主语 for sb. / sth. (对某人 / 某事而言), 其结构为“too + 形容词 / 副词 + for sb. / sth. + to + 动词原形”, 意思为“对某人或某物来说, 太……而不能……”。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

情境 1

Clerk: May I help you, Madam?

Customer: I want to buy a hat.

Clerk: What kind of hat do you want, Madam?

Customer: I like this one, but it is too large to wear.

Clerk: This hat is really too large for you to wear. But I can find a smaller one for you.

Customer: Oh, really? Thank you very much.

售货员: 女士, 我能为你做点什么吗?

顾客: 我想要买一顶帽子。

售货员: 那你喜欢什么样的帽子呢, 女士?

顾客: 我喜欢这顶, 但是这顶帽子太大了, 戴着不合适。

售货员: 这顶帽子对您来说确实大了点, 但我可以为您找一顶尺寸较小的。

顾客: 噢, 真的吗? 非常谢谢你。

## 情境 2

Alice: Jim, can you do me a favor?

Jim: Of course. I guess you want me to carry the box.

Alice: You are right. This box is too heavy for me to carry.

Jim: No problem.

爱丽丝：你能帮我一个忙吗，吉姆？

吉姆：当然可以。我猜你是要我帮你提箱子吧。

爱丽丝：你说对了。这个箱子太重了，我提不动。

吉姆：没问题。

## 情境 3

Mr. Benny: Why you are late again, Vicky?

Vicky: Sorry, Mr. Benny. I get up too late to catch the bus.

Mr. Benny: Get up early next time.

Vicky: Yes, sir.

班尼先生：维姬，你怎么又迟到了？

维姬：对不起，班尼先生。我起床太晚了所以没赶上公共汽车。

班尼先生：下次要早点起床。

维姬：好的，先生。

## 情境 4

David: What are you doing, Tina?

Tina: I am trying to solve this math question, but it is too difficult for me to solve it.

David: Maybe I can help you. Let me take a look.

Tina: Oh, thank you. Here you are.

大卫：蒂娜，你在做什么？

蒂娜：我在试着解这道数学题，但是这题对我来说太难了，我解不出来。

大卫：也许我可以帮你。让我看看。

蒂娜：噢。谢谢你，拿去吧。

## 情境 5

Stephen: Dad, I want to travel this summer.

Dad: Who are you going to travel with?

Stephen: I will go by myself.

Dad: You are too young to travel alone, my son.

Stephen: Please, Dad.

Dad: I will discuss this with your Mom.

斯蒂芬：爸爸，这个夏天我想去旅行。

爸爸：你打算和谁一起去旅行呢？

斯蒂芬：我自己去。

爸爸：儿子，你太小了，不能一个人去旅行。

斯蒂芬：拜托你，爸爸

爸爸：这件事我要和你妈妈商量一下。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 这男孩年纪太小，不能上学。

---

02. 这个问题太难，我不能回答。。

---

03. 这辆汽车太贵，他买不起。

---

04. 这杯牛奶太烫了，还不能喝。

---

05. 外面天气太冷了，不适合跑步。

---



## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

**so...that... 如此……以致于……**

一、so... that... 表示“如此……以致于……”，也强调两个事件的因果关系，其后引导结果状语从句，基本句型为“so + 形容词 / 副词 + that 从句”。例如：

He is so sick that he can't go to work today.

他病得很严重以致于他今天不能去上班。

He was so angry that he couldn't say a word.

他太生气了以至于说不出话来。

二、too... to... 句型可以与 so... that... 句型相互转换，只要将 too... to... 后的动词不定词改为从句，例如：

I was too tired to go to the movies with you.

= I was so tired that I couldn't go to the movies with you.

我太累了，不能跟你去看电影。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. The boy is too young to go to school.

02. This question is too difficult for me to answer.

03. The car is too expensive for him to buy.

04. This cup of milk is too hot to drink.

05. It's too cold outside to go jogging.

Level 1 基础观念马上建立! (程度分级: 初中英语)

## 05 今天我们要去看《变形金刚3》吧!

Let's go to see *Transformers 3* today!

句型

Let's / Let us...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. Let's 是 Let us 的缩写, 用来表示“让我们……”含有催促、建议或请对方一起行动的意思。
2. 两者间有细微差别。由 Let's 引导的祈使句把谈话双方都包括在内, 而 Let us 将对方排除在外, 只限于说话的那方。
3. 在附加问句中, Let's 的疑问句用 shall we 表示征求意见或者提建议。Let us 的疑问句用 will you 表示委婉、客气的请求。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Richard: Let's go to the zoo, shall we?

Bob: OK. When will we go?

Richard: What about tomorrow afternoon?

Bob: Sure. I happen to be available tomorrow.

Richard: That is great.

理查德: 我们一起去动物园怎么样?

鲍勃: 好, 我们什么时候去?

理查德: 明天下午怎么样?

鲍勃: 当然好。我明天正好有空。

理查德: 那就太棒了。

## 情境 2

Eric: This Sunday is Linda's birthday. Will you go to her birthday party?  
Maggie: I can't be sure now.

Eric: That's fine. Just let us know if you can come.

Maggie: OK. I will call you if I can come.

艾瑞克：这个星期天是琳达的生日。你会去她的生日聚会吗？

玛吉：我现在还不能确定。

艾瑞克：没关系。如果你能来的话就通知我们。

玛吉：好，如果我能去就给你打电话。

## 情境 3

Sam: What about going to the Ocean Park this afternoon, John?

John: Good idea. When and where shall we meet?

Sam: Let's meet at the gate of the Ocean Park at 2 p.m.

John: OK. See you then.

Sam: See you.

山姆：约翰，下午去海洋公园怎么样？

约翰：好主意，我们几点在哪里碰面呢？

山姆：那我们就下午两点在海洋公园门口碰面吧。

约翰：好，到时候见。

山姆：待会见。

## 情境 4

Daughter: Mom, I want to have Chinese food tonight. Let's go out for dinner, shall we?

Mom: Sure.

女儿：妈，我今天晚上想吃中餐。我们出去吃，好吗？

妈妈：当然好。

## 情境 5

Cindy: Bella, why do you look so sad? Is there anything bothering you?

Bella: Hmm... Actually, there is one thing.

Cindy: Let us help you, will you?

Bella: That's fine. Thank you. But I want to deal with it by myself.  
Cindy: OK. Just let me know if you need me.

辛迪：贝拉，你为什么看起来这么难过？你是不是在烦恼什么呢？

贝拉：嗯……，事实上是有件事。

辛迪：让我们帮助你好吗？

贝拉：没关系。谢谢你。但是我想自己解决。

辛迪：好，如果你需要我帮忙就让我知道。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 让我们跳支舞吧。

---

02. 让我们为你唱首歌吧。

---

03. 让我们做好朋友，好吗？

---

04. 让我们举杯祝你健康。

---

05. 我们在咖啡厅等你，好吗？

---



## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

### Why not/ Why don't we...?

一、Why not / Why don't we...? “为什么不……呢？”用来表示劝诱、建议或命令，只能接动词原形，不能接句子。例如：

Why not go for a walk after dinner? 为什么晚饭后不去散步呢？

Why not try once more? 为什么不再试试看呢？

二、Why not 与 why don't we...? 意思相同，可以相互转换，但 why don't we 中的 we 在句中做主语，不可省略。例如：

Why not start our work now?

= Why don't we start our work now?

为什么我们现在不开始工作呢？

翻译练习正确答案：

01. Let's dance.

02. Let us sing a song for you.

03. Let's be good friends, shall we?

04. Let us toast for your health.

05. Let us wait for you at the coffee shop, will you?

Level 1 基础观念马上建立! (程度分级: 初中英语)

## 06 不是所有人都想要费德勒赢, 好吗?

Not everybody wants Federer to win, OK?

句型

Not everybody / both / all / every...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

Not 与 both (两者都)、all (全都)、every (每一) 以及 every 的衍生词, 例如: everything (每件事)、everybody (每个人)、everywhere (每处)、everyone (每个人) 连用时, 表示部分否定, Not 可置于这些词的前后, 意义不变。例如:

They are not both good students. (他们两个并非都是好学生。)

Not all the girls like Kenny. (并非所有的女孩都喜欢肯尼。)

Not every manager attended this meeting. (并非所有的经理都出席这次会议。)

I don't know everything. (我并非知道每件事。)

Jason didn't invite everybody to his party. (杰森并没有邀请所有人参加他的派对。)

Not everywhere is as warm as home. (不是每个地方都像家一样温暖。)

Not everyone enjoys ice cream. (不是每个人都喜欢吃冰淇淋。)

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

情境 1

Teacher: Excuse me, I don't know all of your names. Would you please introduce yourselves?

Student 1: Sure. I am Mark. I am in Class 102.

Student 2: I am Jack. I am in Class 102, too.

Student 3: My name is Linda. I am in Class 203.

Teacher: Thank you so much.

老师：不好意思，我不知道你们所有人的名字。你们能自我介绍一下吗？

学生 1：当然好，我是马克。我在 102 班。

学生 2：我是杰索菲娅克。我也在 102 班。

学生 3：我的名字是琳达。我在 203 班。

老师：非常感谢你们。

## 情境 2

Joe: Do you know why Sophia didn't come to work today?

Vivian: Sorry, but I don't know. I don't know everything about her.

Joe: That's fine. I will call her later. Thank you anyway.

Vivian: You are welcome.

乔：你知道为什么索菲娅今天没来上班吗？

薇薇安：抱歉，我不知道。我并不知道她的所有事情。

乔：没关系。晚一点我再打电话给她。总之谢谢你。

薇薇安：不客气。

## 情境 3

Lucy: Wow! Susan, you look so beautiful today.

Susan: Thank you. I think you mean my new dress.

Lucy: Where did you buy it?

Susan: It is limited in Hong Kong. This kind of dress cannot be found everywhere.

Lucy: Oh. No wonder it looks so special.

露西：哇！苏珊，你今天看起来真漂亮。

苏珊：谢谢，我想你是指我的新裙子吧。

露西：你在哪里买的呀？

苏珊：只有香港才有。这种裙子并不是到处都可以找到的。

露西：噢，难怪看起来这么特别。

## 情境 4

Chris: Hey, Kate. I heard you have a twin sister. Is that true?

Kate: Yes, her name is Ann.

Chris: You are so lucky.

Kate: Err... maybe, but not both of us have the same hobbies. When I read book, she always listens to rock music. I really hate that.

Chris: At least you are not alone.

Kate: That's true.

克里斯：嗨，凯特，我听说你有个双胞胎妹妹。是真的吗？

凯特：是的，她的名字叫安。

克里斯：你真是太幸运了。

凯特：哦……也许吧，但是我们的爱好并不相同。我在看书的时候，她总是在听摇滚乐。我真的很讨厌那样。

克里斯：至少你不孤单呀。

凯特：那倒是真的。

---

### 情境 5

Wendy: Why did you refuse to work abroad, Sasha? Not everybody has a chance like this.

Sasha: I know. But I don't want to leave my parents.

Wendy: Hmm... you are still a child.

Sasha: That's what you think. I won't regret my choice.

Wendy: You are right. Not everyone will make the same choice.

温蒂：你为什么拒绝到国外工作呢，萨莎？并不是每个人都有像这样的机会。

萨莎：我知道。但是我不想离开我的父母。

温蒂：嗯……你还是个小孩。

萨莎：那是你觉得。我不会后悔我的选择。

温蒂：你说得没错。并不是每个人都会做出一样的选择。



## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 这两种物质并不都能溶于水。

---

02. 并不是这里所有的人都很友善。

---

03. 并非人人都喜欢这部电影。

---

04. 并非他所有的话都是对的。

---

05. 这种植物并不是随处可见的。

---

翻译练习正确答案：

01. Not both of the substances can dissolve in water.  
= Both of the substances can not dissolve in water.

02. Not all people here are friendly.  
= All people here are not friendly.

03. Not everybody likes this film.  
= Everybody doesn't like this film.

04. Not all his words are right.  
= All his words are not right.

05. The plant is not seen everywhere.

Level 1 基础观念马上建立！（程度分级：初中英语）：

## 07 难怪你上课时总是想睡觉！

It is no wonder (that) you always feel sleepy in class.

句型 (It is) no wonder (that)...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

(It is) no wonder (that)... 意思为“难怪……，怪不得……”，后面接名词从句。It 是形式主语，that 后的名词从句才是真正的主语。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Stephen: Do you see Eric, Susan?

Susan: He is studying in the classroom.

Stephen: Wow. He studies very hard. It is no wonder that he always gets the highest score.

Susan: That's true.

斯蒂芬：苏珊，你看到艾瑞克了吗？

苏珊：他正在教室里念书。

斯蒂芬：哇，他好用功。难怪他总是得最高分。

苏珊：你说的没错。

### 情境 2

Joe: Why didn't Ann come to work today?

Tony: She has been ill for several days.

Joe: Oh, it is no wonder that I didn't see her yesterday.

乔：为什么安今天没来上班呢？

托尼：她已经病了好几天了。

乔：哦，难怪我昨天没看到她。

### 情境 3

Michael: Could you give me a hand, Betty?

Betty: Sure. What can I do for you?

Michael: I don't understand this math question very well. Can you explain it to me?

Betty: No problem.

Michael: You are so kind, Betty. It is no wonder that everyone loves you.

迈克尔：贝蒂，你可以帮我一个忙吗？

贝蒂：当然啦，我能帮你什么？

迈克尔：我不是很懂这道数学题，你可以解释给我听吗？

贝蒂：没问题。

迈克尔：贝蒂，你真是太好了。怪不得每个人都喜欢你。

### 情境 4

Daniel: Hi, this is Daniel speaking.

Sophia: Hi, Daniel. This is Sophia. I have called you for three times. Where have you been?

Daniel: Oh, really? I am so sorry. I was listening to music and didn't hear the phone ring.

Sophia: Hmm... It is no wonder that you didn't answer it.

Daniel: I am really sorry.

Sophia: It's OK.

丹尼尔：喂，我是丹尼尔。

索菲娅：嗨，丹尼尔。我是索菲娅。我已经给你打过三次电话了。你到哪里了？

丹尼尔：噢，真的吗？真不好意思，我刚刚正在听音乐，没听到电话铃响。

索菲娅：嗯，难怪你没有接电话。

丹尼尔：真是对不起。

索菲娅：没关系。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 难怪她拒绝你的邀请。

---

02. 难怪他不想和你去看电影。

---

03. 难怪我好像曾经在哪里见过你。

---

04. 难怪人们说世界越来越小。

---

05. 难怪她这么伤心。

---

翻译练习正确答案：

01. No wonder she turned down your invitation.

02. It is no wonder that he didn't want to go to the movies with you.

03. No wonder it seems that I have seen you somewhere.

04. No wonder people say that the world becomes smaller and smaller.

05. It is no wonder that she was so sad.



Level 1 基础观念马上建立！（程度分级：初中英语）

## 08 完成这个专案得花上七个工作日呢！

It will take 7 working days to finish this project!

**句型** It takes sb. + (时间) + to (动作)

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. It takes sb. + (时间) + to + (动作), 这个句型表示“做某事花费了某人多长的时间”。这个句型的主语是形式主语 It, 动词为 take (某事花费……多久时间), 其后接动词不定词。例如：

It took Jason two hours to finish the report.  
(把这份报告做完花了杰森两个小时。)

2. 如果以某人做主语, 动词需改用 spend (某人花费……多久时间做某事), 其后接介词 on + 事情或动名词。例如：

Jason spent two hours finishing the report.  
= Jason spent two hours on the report.  
(杰森花了两个小时把报告做完。)

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Steven: Johnson, I heard that you made a great progress on this exam.  
Johnson: Yes, it took me two days to prepare this time.  
Steven: That's really good. No pains, no gains. You deserve the high score.

Johnson: Thank you.

斯蒂芬：约翰逊，我听说你这次考试进步很多。

约翰逊：没错，准备这次的考试花了我两天。

斯蒂芬：那真是太好了。一份耕耘，一份收获。你应该得高分的。

约翰逊：谢谢你。

### 情境 2

Richard: Hi, Jack. What about your new job?

Jack: Not bad. It took me several weeks to get used to the new job.

Richard: That's great.

理查德：嗨，杰克。你的新工作怎么样啊？

杰克：还不错。熟悉这份工作花了我好几个星期。

理查德：那很好。

### 情境 3

Cathy: What about going to the shopping mall this afternoon, Linda?

Linda: That sounds great. When are we going to meet?

Cathy: It will take me two hours to go to the shopping mall. So let's meet at 3 o'clock, shall we?

Linda: OK. See you then.

Cathy: See you.

凯西：今天下午去购物中心好不好啊，琳达？

琳达：听起来不错。我们要什么时候见面呢？

凯西：到购物中心要花我 2 个小时。所以我们 3 点钟见面，好吗？

琳达：没问题。到时候见。

凯西：拜拜。

### 情境 4

James: Oh, Tina, your English is very good. How long did you learn English?

Tina: It took me several years to learn English well.

James: Can you tell me how to learn English well?

Tina: Practice more. As you know, practice makes perfect.

James: You are right.

詹姆斯：噢，蒂娜，你英语非常好。你学英文多久了呢？

蒂娜：学好英语花了我好几年。

詹姆斯：你可以告诉我要怎么学好英语吗？

蒂娜：多练习。你知道的，熟能生巧。

詹姆斯：你说得的没错。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 我花了两个小时才能完成作业。

02. 我花两天时间才把这本书看完。

03. 他花了一个小时才到北京。

04. 为了讲一口流利的英语，罗伯特花了好多年时间辛苦练习。

05. 我花了相当长的时间，才明白这幅画的意思。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. It took me two hours to finish my homework.

02. It will take me two days to finish reading this book.

03. It took him an hour to arrive in Beijing.

04. It took Robert many years of hard working to speak English fluently.

05. It took me quite a long time to understand the meaning of the painting.

Day 12

Level 1 基础观念马上建立! (程度分级: 初中英语)

## 09 你觉得《哈利波特》的结局怎么样? What do you think of / about the end of *Harry Potter*?

句型 What do you think of / about...?

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明 Sentence Patterns Introduction

What do you think of / about...? 表示“你认为……怎么样? ”, 用来询问对方对某事的看法。可以说“ How do you like...? ”。当然对这样的问题不能简单地用“ Yes ”或“ No ”来回答, 要具体说明理由。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话 Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Bob: What do you think of the NBA game last night?

Jimmy: It's amazing. I love it very much.

Bob: Me too. I saw Kobe Bryant. He is my favorite player.

Jimmy: He is one of the best players. I also like LeBron James.

Bob: He is a great player, too. I am looking forward to their rivalry next season.

Jimmy: Me, too. That must be a great game.

鲍勃: 你觉得昨晚的 NBA 篮球赛怎么样?

吉米: 太棒了, 我非常喜欢。

鲍勃: 我也是, 我看到了科比·布莱恩特。他是最爱的球员。

吉米: 柯比是最好的球员之一。我也喜欢勒布朗·詹姆斯。

鲍勃: 他也是个很棒的球员。我很期待他们下一季的同场竞赛。

吉米: 我也是。那一定会是很精采的一场比赛。



## 情境 2

Husband: I am considering moving to a bigger house. What do you think of the house price now, honey?

Wife: In my opinion, the house price will continue to rise. So it is not a good idea to change a house now.

Husband: Maybe you are right. I have to think more about it.

丈夫：我现在正在考虑搬到比较大的房子。亲爱的，你觉得现在房价怎么样？

妻子：在我看来，房价将会持续上涨。所以现在换房并不是一个好主意。

丈夫：也许你是对的。我得再好好想想。

## 情境 3

Alice: What do you think about the film, 2012?

Sarah: It is an amazing disaster film.

Alice: Do you think 2012 will be the end of the world?

Sarah: It's just a rumor. But I think we human beings should learn to protect the environment.

Alice: I can't agree more.

爱丽丝：你觉得《2012》那部电影怎么样？

莎拉：那是一部很棒的灾难片。

爱丽丝：那你认为 2012 会是世界末日吗？

莎拉：那只是谣言。但我认为我们人类应该要学会保护环境。

爱丽丝：我非常同意。

## 情境 4

Frank: What do you think of your new English teacher, Cindy?

Cindy: She is very pretty. And she can speak good American English. The most important thing is that she is very patient.

Frank: It seems that she is an excellent teacher.

Cindy: Yes, we all love her very much.

法兰克：辛迪，你觉得你的新英语老师怎么样啊？

辛迪：她非常漂亮。并且她能说一口流利的美式英语。最重要的是，她很有耐心。

法兰克：看来她是一名优秀的老师。

辛迪：是的，我们都很喜欢她。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 你认为那部电影怎么样？

---

02. 你觉得新市长怎么样？

---

03. 你对这次意外有什么看法？

---

04. 你觉得他的演讲怎么样？

---

05. 您觉得我们的服务怎么样？

---

翻译练习正确答案：

01. What do you think of / about the movie?

02. What do you think of / about the new mayor?

03. What do you think of / about this accident?

04. What do you think of / about his speech?

05. What do you think of / about our service?

---

## 10 我妈叫我下课后就马上回家。

My mother asks me to go home  
as soon as the class is over.

句型 ...as soon as...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. ...as soon as... 用来表示“一……就……”，强调两个连续发生或是几乎同时进行的动作。其句型为主句 + as soon as + 时间状态从句。
2. 如果主句用将来时、情态动词或祈使句，时间状态从句必须用现在时代替将来时。例如：  
Put on your raincoat as soon as it rains. (一下雨就把你的雨衣穿起来。)  
I will call you as soon as I am home. (我一回到家就会打电话给你。)
3. ...as soon as... 在句子中的位置比较灵活，可以置于句首、句中或句末。或与 possible (可能的) 组合成片语“as soon as it is possible”，省略形式为“as soon as possible”，意为“尽快”。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Linda: Hi, Lily. This is Linda. I have called you for several times but you didn't answer.

Lily: Sorry, Linda. I'm busy now. I will call you back as soon as I can, OK?

Linda: Sure. Waiting for your call.

琳达：嗨，莉莉，我是琳达。我打了好几次电话给你，你都没有接。

莉莉：抱歉，琳达。我现在很忙，我一有空就打电话给你，好吗？

琳达：好的。我等你电话。

---

### 情境 2

Stephen: Doctor, when can you start my uncle's operation?

Doctor: I am not sure. But we will schedule the operation as soon as an operation room is available.

Stephen: OK. Please make it quick.

斯蒂芬：医生，我叔叔的手术什么时候可以开始？

医生：我不是很确定。但一旦有空的手术室，我们就会立刻安排手术。

斯蒂芬：好的，请尽快。

---

### 情境 3

Customer: Can you deliver this air-conditioner to my house?

Salesman: Yes, we can. Just fill out this form, please.

Customer: OK.

Salesman: When do you want it to be delivered, Madam?

Customer: As soon as possible.

Salesman: Mmm... How about tomorrow?

Customer: Tomorrow will be fine.

顾客：你们能把这台空调送到我家吗？

售货员：是的，我们可以的。请您先填完这张表。

顾客：好的。

售货员：您希望什么时候送货，女士？

顾客：越快越好。

售货员：嗯……明天怎么样？

顾客：明天可以。

---

### 情境 4

Betty: Carl, do you know where Susan is? I must find her as soon as possible. It's urgent.

Carl: I didn't see her today. Did you call her?



Betty: Yes, of course. I have called her for three times. But she didn't answer it.

Carl: OK. I will call her roommate, Tina. See if she knows where Susan is.

Betty: Thank you.

Carl: You're welcome.

贝蒂：卡尔，你知道苏珊在哪里吗？我必须尽快找到她，有急事。

卡尔：我今天没见到她。你给她打电话了吗？

贝蒂：当然打了。我已经给她打了三次电话，她都没接。

卡尔：好吧。我会打给她室友，蒂娜。看看她知不知道苏珊在哪。

贝蒂：谢谢你。

卡尔：不客气。

### 情境 5

Philip: Would you like to play soccer with me, Ricky?

Ricky: I'd love to. But I have to finish my homework. I will go as soon as I finish it, OK?

Philip: OK. See you later.

菲利普：瑞奇，要不要和我一起去踢足球呀？

瑞奇：我很乐意，但我必须先把作业做完。我一做完作业就马上过去，好吗？

菲利普：好。晚点见。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 我要求她尽快与玛丽联系。

02. 这项政策应该尽快付诸实施。

03. 我一到就马上给你打电话。

---

04. 如果出了什么事，尽快让我知道。

---

05. 我一睡醒就会忘记梦的大部分内容。

---

翻译练习正确答案：

---

01. I asked her to get in touch with Mary as soon as possible.

---

02. The policy should be brought into effect as soon as possible.

---

03. I will call you as soon as I arrive.

---

04. Let me know as soon as possible if something happened.

---

05. I forgot most of my dreams as soon as I woke up.

---

Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽! (程度分级: 高中第一~二册)

## 11 除非你跟我们一起去, 否则我是不会跟你哥去看电影的。

I won't go to the movie with your brother unless you go with us.

句型 unless...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. unless... 是从属连词, 意为“除非……否则……”, 其后连接一个条件从句。

例如:

Jessica won't date you unless her mom asks her to.

(杰西卡不会和你约会, 除非她妈妈要求她那么做。)

2. 由 unless... 引导的条件从句和 if (如果) 后的条件从句, 因为假设语气, 动词都需要用现在时代替将来时。例如:

Unless it rains tomorrow, the show will still be on.

(除非明天下雨, 否则的话表演还是要举行的。)

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Mother: Sam, you will miss the bus unless you hurry up.

Sam: I know, Mom. I am leaving now.

Mother: Don't forget to take your breakfast with you.

Sam: OK. Don't worry, Mom. Bye.

Mother: Bye.

妈妈：山姆，如果你不快点，你会错过公共汽车。

山姆：我知道，妈妈。我现在就出发。

妈妈：不要忘记带你的早餐。

山姆：好，别担心。妈妈。再见。

妈妈：再见。

### 情境 2

Boss: You made the same mistake again, Steven.

Steven: I am really sorry. I will be much more careful.

Boss: Unless you work harder, you will get the sack.

Steven: Yes, I will keep that in mind.

老板：史蒂芬，你又犯同样的错误了。

史蒂芬：我真的很抱歉。我会更加小心。

老板：除非你再努力点工作，否则你就要被解雇了。

史蒂芬：好，我会谨记在心的。

### 情境 3

John: I heard that you went to Beijing last week, Jack.

Jack: That's right. It's a very beautiful city.

John: Did you go to the Great Wall?

Jack: Of course I did. It is said, "You are not a hero unless you climb up to the Great Wall."

John: What's the scenery like on the Great Wall?

Jack: The scenery is beyond description. You must go there some other time.

约翰：杰克，我听说你上个星期去北京了。

杰克：没错。那是个非常美丽的城市。

约翰：你去长城了吗？

杰克：当然有。俗话说“不到长城非好汉。”

约翰：长城上风景如何？

杰克：风景美的难以形容。你一定要找个时间也去一趟。

### 情境 4

Patient: Can I see Dr. Blair at 10:00 tomorrow morning?



Secretary: I'm sorry. She can't see you until 10:30 unless there's a cancellation.

Patient: How about 11:30?

Secretary: No problem. She's available then.

病人：我明天上午 10 点可以见布莱尔医生吗？

秘书：很抱歉。除非有取消预约，否则医生在 10 点半之前都不能见你。

病人：那么 11 点半怎么样呢？

秘书：没问题。她那时有空。

### 情境 5

Jenny: Can I go to mountain climbing with you this Sunday?

Alice: You are very welcome. We will leave at 10 in the morning unless it rains.

Jenny: OK. I hope it is sunny this Sunday. It must be great fun to go with you.

Alice: It must be. See you on Sunday.

珍妮：我这个星期天可以和你们一起去爬山吗？

爱丽丝：很欢迎你。除非下雨，否则我们早上十点出发。

珍妮：好的。我希望星期天是晴天。和你们去一定会很好玩的。

爱丽丝：一定会的。星期天见。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 你要快点，否则就会错过公共汽车。

02. 除非我们早点离开，否则不能准时到。

03. 除非我确定事实如此，否则我就不会这样说了。

04. 除非你百分之百确定，否则不要作任何的承诺。

05. 除非你更努力用功，否则考试永远过不了。

## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

### 附加问句

1. until... “直到……”，表示某一个动作一直持续到某一时间，后面可以接具体的时间，如 three o'clock（三点钟），也可以接一个时间副词从句。

2. until... 可以用于肯定句与否定句中，但用法不同。在肯定句中，动词必须是延续性动词，例如：

The movie lasts until three o'clock.（这场电影一直演到三点。）

It may last until Friday.（这可能要延续到星期五。）

3. not...until... 是否定形式，意指“直到……才……”，表示直到某一时间某一行为才发生，且之前该行为并没有发生。否定句中的动词可以是延续性动词或是终止性动词。例如：

I won't leave here until you give me the money.

（直到你给我钱，我才会离开这里。）

翻译练习正确答案：

01. You will miss the bus unless you hurry up.

02. We won't get there on time unless we leave earlier.

03. I wouldn't be saying this unless I were sure of the facts.

04. Don't promise anything unless you're 100 percent sure.

05. You will never pass the exam unless you study harder.

Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽! (程度分级: 高中第一~二册)

## 12 苹果公司不知道 iPad 2 会不会是畅销商品。

APPLE doesn't know whether iPad 2 will be a hit or not.

句型 whether...or...

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. whether...or... 强调在两者之间的选择, 表示“是……还是……”或是“无论 / 不管……还是……”。

2. whether...or not 常用来强调“无论是不是 / 不管要不要……还是……”, or not 也可以省略。

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

#### 情境 1

David: Eric, why don't you take part in the competition?

Eric: Hmm... I am afraid I might fail.

David: It doesn't matter whether you fail or not. Just try your best.

Eric: Well, I think you are right. I will give it a try.

David: Good for you.

大卫: 艾瑞克, 你为什么不参加这次的比赛呢?

艾瑞克: 嗯……我怕我可能会失败。

大卫: 会不会失败并不重要, 只要你尽力就好。

艾瑞克: 好吧, 我想你说得对。我会试试看。

大卫: 很好。

**情境 2**

Sarah : Will Mr. Smith come to your birthday party, Cindy?

Cindy : I don't know. But it makes no difference to me whether Mr. Smith will come or not.

Sarah : Anyway, I will come.

Cindy : Glad to hear that, Sarah. You are my best friend. I hope our friendship can last forever.

Sarah : I believe we will.

莎拉：辛迪，史密斯先生会参加你的生日派对吗？

辛迪：我不知道。但是对我来说，史密斯先生来或不来都无所谓。

莎拉：不管怎样，我会去的。

辛迪：很高兴听你这样说，莎拉。你是我最好的朋友，我希望我们的友谊可以一直持续下去。

莎拉：我相信我们会的。

**情境 3**

Joanna : Mary's wedding is next Sunday. Are you going to her wedding?

Julie : I am not sure whether I can go or not. I have an appointment with my dentist on that day.

Joanna : That's too bad. Maybe you can come and join us later.

Julie : That's a good idea.

乔安娜：玛丽的婚礼是下个星期天。你会去她的婚礼吗？

朱莉：我不确定我能不能去。我那天和牙医有约。

乔安娜：那太不巧了。或许你可以晚点过来加入我们。

朱莉：真是个好主意。

**情境 4**

Donna : Why do you look so confused, George?

George : I am wondering whether I should play basketball or go to the movies this afternoon.

Donna : That's quite an easy question. You can play basketball this afternoon, and then go to the movies later.

George : Would you like to see a movie tonight with me?



Donna: Yes, I'd love to.

唐娜：乔治，你为什么看起来这么困惑呀？

乔治：我在想我下午应该去打篮球还是去看电影。

唐娜：这是个相当简单的问题。你可以下午打篮球，然后今晚再去看电影。

乔治：你愿意今晚和我一起去看电影吗？

唐娜：是的，我很乐意。

### 情境 5

Student: Professor, do you have a minute? I have something to talk to you.  
Professor: Yes, I do.

Student: It's about my paper. I don't know how to make use of the information in my thesis.

Professor: First, I think you should make sure whether the information is related to your topic or not.

Student: I can't be sure about this...

Professor: That's fine. Just bring your paper to my office. Maybe I can give you some suggestions.

学生：教授，您有空吗？我有事想和您谈一下。

教授：好的。

学生：是关于我的论文。我不知道该如何在我的论文里好好利用这些资料。

教授：首先，我想你应该确定你找到的资料是不是与你的题目相关。

学生：这点我不是很确定……

教授：没关系。你带你的论文来我办公室。或许我可以给你一些建议。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 我们要出去还是要待在家里，都取决于天气好坏。

02. 无论下不下雨，我们每个星期六都会去打网球。

---

03. 不管你喜不喜欢，我还是要做。

---

04. 我不能判断她是对还是错。

---

05. 不管你是否告诉她们，她们都会查明真相。

---

## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

**if... 是否……**

1. if... 除了表示“如果……”引导条件从句外，还有“是否……”的意思，其后连接从句。

2. if... 做“如果……”解释时，为假设语气，其后从句需以现在时代替将来时。若为“是否……”意思时，则不需要。例如：

Does anyone know if he will come today? (有谁知道他会不会来?)

If I have time, I will come to see you.

(如果我有时间，我就来看你。) → 假设语气

翻译练习正确答案：

---

01. Whether we will go out or stay at home depends on the weather.

---

02. Whether it rains or not, we always play tennis on Saturdays.

---

03. Whether you like it or not, I'll still do it anyway.

---

04. I can't tell whether she is right or wrong.

---

05. They'll find out the truth, whether you tell them or not.

---

Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽！（程度分级：高中第一～二册）

## 13 你不一起去吗？

Don't you want to come along?

句型 Isn't (Don't / Can't / Won't...) + sb....?

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

否定疑问句通常用于表达惊异、失望、责难、反问、赞叹、建议或有礼貌的邀请等语气。这样的疑问句比起一般疑问句带有浓厚的情感色彩。善用否定疑问句，可巧妙地对方透露说话时的情绪。面对否定疑问句时，无论是否同意问话者的看法，只要答案是肯定的，即回答“yes”；若为否定，则回答“No”。例如：

A: Isn't Mary a beautiful bride? B: Yes, she is.

(A：玛莉不是个很美丽的新娘吗？ B：是啊，她是。)

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

#### 情境 1

Mom: Amy, your father and I are going to the supermarket.

Don't you want to come along?

Amy: No, Mom. I think I'd better stay in and finish my homework.

妈妈：艾米，你爸跟我要去超市。你不一起去吗？

艾米：不了，妈。我想我最好待在家里把作业写完。

#### 情境 2

Nancy: How could you say that to hurt his feeling?

Aren't you his best friend?

Peter: I am. But I just want him to face the truth.

南希：你怎么能说那些话伤害他呢？你不是他最好的朋友吗？

彼得：我是啊。我只是希望他面对现实而已。

### 情境 3

Vivian : Wow! Look! Isn't this place beautiful?

Larry : It sure is. I'm glad this is where we're going to spend our summer.

薇薇安：哇！你看！这个地方难道不美吗？

拉里：真的好美！我很高兴这是我们接下来要度过夏天的地方。

### 情境 4

Bill : *Transformers*? What are you guys talking about?

Jack : Huh? Haven't you seen the movie yet?

Steven : Are you kidding me? Don't you know the film? This is one of the most popular movies this summer.

比尔：变形金刚？你们在讲什么呀？

杰克：咦？你还没看过这部电影吗？

史蒂芬：你在开玩笑吗？你不知道这部电影？这是今年夏天最受欢迎的电影之一。

### 情境 5

Man : I'm afraid that I can't go to work today.

Woman : Why not? Aren't you feeling well?

Man : Yes. I feel nauseous. I think I need to see a doctor.

男子：我今天恐怕不能去上班了。

女子：怎么了？你不舒服吗？

男子：嗯，我觉得想吐。我想我得去看看医生。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 难道你不吃早餐的吗？



02. 你不是跟我说你想吃汉堡吗?

03. 这不是你正在找的书吗

04. 他们不是你的爷爷奶奶吗?

05. 你还没读过这本书吗?

## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

### 附加问句

在陈述句后加上一个附加问句，以反问的方式加强语气或确认信息内容。

例如：It's a beautiful place, isn't it?

这是个美丽的地方，不是吗?

You have been to London, haven't you?

你去过伦敦，不是吗?

回答附加问句的方式与回答否定疑问句的方式相同。无论是否同意说话者的看法，只要答案是肯定的，即回答 “yes”；若为否定，则回答 “No”。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. Don't you have breakfast?

02. Didn't you tell me that you want to eat hamburgers?

03. Isn't this the book that you are looking for?

04. Aren't they your grandparents?

05. Haven't you read this book yet?

Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽! (程度分级: 高中第一~二册)

## 14 多美的一个包啊!

How beautiful this bag is!

句型 What / How...!

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. 感叹句通常由 what / how 引导, 表示赞美、惊叹、喜悦等感情。由 what / how 分别引导强调的名词及形容词, 并将强调的部分移至句首, 其后再接句子的主语与动词。句子的主语与动词也可以省略。句型分别如下:

What + 名词 (+ 主语 + 动词) !

How + 形容词 (+ 主语 + 动词) !

2. what 修饰名词时, 单数可数名词前要加不定冠词 a / an, 复数可数名词和不可数名词前不用冠词。例如:

What a beautiful girl (she is)! (她真是个漂亮的女孩!)

3. how 修饰形容词、副词或动词, 并将强调的部分移至句首。例如:

How beautiful she is! (她真是漂亮!)

How fast she can run! (她跑得真快!)

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

情境 1

Husband: Oh, what a mess! Why didn't you clean up the room today, Honey?

Wife: Honey, I was really busy today, and I stayed up for work last night. So I really don't have time to do the housework today.

Husband: That's fine, sweet heart. Let's do it together tomorrow, OK?

丈夫：噢，真是一团糟呀！亲爱的，你今天怎么没打扫房间呀？

妻子：亲爱的，我今天很忙，而且我昨天晚上熬夜工作。所以我今天真的没有时间做家事。

丈夫：没关系，甜心。我们明天一起打扫，好吗？

## 情境 2

Bill: Oh, boy! That's too bad.

Carl: What's the matter, Bill?

Bill: Tina finally would like to go to cinema with me tonight. But the boss asked me to finish the paper today. Which means, I have to work late today!

Carl: Oh! What a tragedy!

比尔：噢，天啊！这真是太糟了。

卡尔：怎么啦，比尔？

比尔：蒂娜今晚终于想要和我一起去看电影了。但是老板要我今天就把报告完成。这就代表我今天晚上得加班啦！

卡尔：噢！真是太惨了！

## 情境 3

Amy: What a fine day today!

Jim: Yes, it is. Would you like to have a walk in the park with me?

Amy: I'd love to. I love the fresh air and the nice view in the park.

Jim: Great. Let's go.

艾米：今天天气真好啊！

吉姆：是的，天气很晴朗。你想不想和我去公园散个步？

艾米：我很乐意。我喜欢公园里新鲜的空气和美丽的景色。

吉姆：太棒了。我们走吧。

**情境 4**

Maggie: How fast time flies! We are going to graduate this July.

Ann: You are right. I still remember the first day I went to this school.

Maggie: We were freshmen at that time, but now we are busy finding jobs.

Ann: But we really had a great time here.

玛吉：时间过得真快呀！我们这个七月就要毕业了。

安：你说得没错。我还记得来学校的第一天呢。

玛吉：我们那时候是新生，但是现在却都忙着找工作了。

安：不过我们在这里真的过得很快乐。

**情境 5**

Bill: It is raining heavily outside. We can't play football today, Mike.

Mike: How disappointing!

Bill: But we can watch films at home in such a bad day.

Mike: Good idea!

比尔：外面雨下得很大。我们今天不能踢足球了，迈克。

迈克：真扫兴！

比尔：但是在这样的坏天气里，我们可以在家看电影。

迈克：好主意！

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 这朵花多么漂亮啊！

02. 我们等你等了好久了！

03. 她唱得多么好呀！



04. 多么好的景色啊!

05. 她们看起来多么高兴呀!

## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

**such a / an... “如此……”**

such a / an... 表示“如此……”也是强调用法之一。such 修饰单数名词时，放于不定冠词 a (an) 之前，若名词前有 one (一个)、no (没有)、any (任何的)、some (一些的)、all (所有的)、many (许多的) 等修饰时，such 放在这些修饰词之后。例如：

She is such a beautiful woman. (她是一位如此美丽的女人。)

There is no such a thing. (没有这么一回事。)

翻译练习正确答案：

01. How beautiful this flower is!

02. What a long time we have been waiting for you!

03. How well she sings!

04. What a nice view it is!

05. How happy they look!

Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽！（程度分级：高中第一～二册）

## 15 你介意让我先上厕所吗？

Do you mind if I use the toilet first?

句型

Do / Would you mind...?

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

Do / Would you mind...? 意思是“你介意……吗？”用来表示委婉的请求，或希望得到对方的许可，后接动名词或 if（是否）从句。其中 would 比 do 语气更委婉、更礼貌。熟人之间说话时，可用 do 代替 would。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

John: Would you mind if I open the window? It's very hot in the classroom.

Jack: Fine by me. It's not bother me at all.

John: Thank you.

约翰：你介意我打开窗户吗？教室里太热了。

杰克：我都可以。这一点都不影响我。

约翰：谢谢你。

### 情境 2

Teacher: Would you mind giving your parents a message?

Student: Of course not, sir. What do you want to say to my parents?

Teacher: Please tell your parents that I will visit your house tonight, OK?

Student: No problem, sir.

教师：你介意带个口信给你父母吗？

学生：当然不，先生。您想和我父母说什么？

教师：请告诉你父母我今晚会上去你家拜访，好吗？

学生：没问题，先生。

### 情境 3

Susan: Would you mind helping me?

Daniel: I'd be glad to. What do you want me to do?

Susan: Help me hang up this picture.

Daniel: No problem. Hand me the hammer over, please.

Susan: Here you are!

苏珊：你能帮我个忙吗？

丹尼尔：我很乐意。你想要我做什么？

苏珊：帮我挂一下这幅画。

丹尼尔：没问题。请把锤子递给我。

苏珊：给你。

### 情境 4

Wife: Would you mind giving me a lift to the shopping mall?

Husband: But I have to go to work now. We are not on the same way. You can take a taxi.

Wife: That's fine. Honey. Bye.

Husband: Bye, sweet heart.

妻子：你介意顺道载我去购物中心吗？

丈夫：但是我现在必须去上班。我们不顺路。你可以搭出租车。

妻子：没关系。亲爱的，再见。

丈夫：再见，甜心。

### 情境 5

John: Hi, do you mind if I sit with you?

Mary: Of course not. I am alone.

John: Oh, thank you. Is this your first time here?

Mary: Yes, this is my very first time to Paris.

John: Really? So do you like this city?

Mary: Like it? No, I love it! It's like my dream finally comes true.

约翰：嗨，你介意我坐在你旁边吗？

玛丽：当然不会。我一个人（坐）。

约翰：喔，谢谢你。这是你第一次到这里吗？

玛丽：是的，这是我第一次来巴黎。

约翰：真的吗？那你喜欢这个城市吗？

玛丽：喜欢？不，我爱死它了！对我来说这就像美梦成真一样。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 你介意我在这里抽烟吗？

---

02. 你介意我跟你借点钱吗？

---

03. 你介意我问你一些私人问题吗？

---

04. 你介意把电视关掉吗？

---

翻译练习正确答案：

01. Do you mind if I smoke here?

02. Do you mind if I borrow some money from you?

03. Do you mind if I ask you some personal questions?

04. Would you mind turning off the TV?



Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽！（程度分级：高中第一～二册）

## 16 这场比赛不只令人屏息还令人非常难忘！

This game is not only breath-taking but also unforgettable.

**句型** not only...but also...

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. not only...but also... 意指“不但……而且……”，为并列连词，用于连接两个表示并列关系的形容词、名词、副词甚至是动词，并着重强调后者，其中的 also 可省略。例如：

Mary is not only beautiful but (also) considerate. (玛丽不但漂亮而且还很体贴。)

2. not only...but also... 若连接两个主语，动词需与最接近的主语保持一致。例如：

Not only you but also I am in Class 201. (不只你还有我都在 201 班。)

3. 若连接两个句子，not only 后面的句子要用倒装句。例如：

Not only should you set up a goal but also you should study hard.  
(你不只该立下志向，还应该要努力用功。)

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

#### 情境 1

Peter: What do you think of David?

Frank: He is not only weak but also vain.

Peter: Oh, really? I thought he is an honest and generous guy.

Frank: Err... You know little about him.

彼得：你觉得大卫怎么样？

法兰克：他既软弱又爱慕虚荣。

彼得：噢，真的吗？我还以为他是一个慷慨大方又诚实的人呢。

法兰克：哦……你对他了解太少了。

## 情境 2

Jessie: Professor, I heard that you can speak not only English but also French. Is that true?

Professor: Yeah, I used to live in France.

Jessie: I love France very much. Can you tell me something about your life in France?

Professor: Yes, of course.

杰西：教授，我听说您不但会说英语，还会说法语。是真的吗？

教授：是的，我以前曾经住在法国。

杰西：我非常喜欢法国。您能跟我说些您在法国生活的事吗？

教授：好呀，当然可以。

## 情境 3

Joe: I saw your new teacher yesterday. She is very pretty.

Lily: She is not only beautiful but also very knowledgeable about classical music.

Joe: You're so lucky.

乔：我昨天看到了你们的新老师。她非常漂亮。

莉莉：是的，她不仅漂亮，而且对古典音乐的知识相当丰富。

乔：你们真是太幸运了。

## 情境 4

Tina: Who is this lovely little girl, Emily?

Emily: She is my niece.

Tina: Oh, she is so adorable. How old is she?

Emily: She is three years old now. You know what? She can not only read but also write.

Tina: She is so amazing.

蒂娜：埃米莉，这个可爱的小女孩是谁？

埃米莉：她是我的侄女。

蒂娜：噢，她真是太可爱了。她几岁了？

埃米莉：她三岁了。你知道吗？她不但会读还会写。

蒂娜：她真是令人惊讶。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 这孩子既健康又充满活力。

02. 我不仅懂英语，而且懂法语。

03. 气体不仅改变形状，而且改变体积。

04. 莎士比亚不仅是一位剧作家，而且是一位演员。

05. 我不仅喜欢打篮球，还喜欢打网球。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. The child is not only healthy but also full of energy.

02. I know not only English but also French.

03. A gas changes not only in shape but also in volume.

04. Shakespeare is not only a play writer but also an actor.

05. I like playing not only basketball but also tennis.

Day 16  
Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽! (程度分级: 高中第一~二册)

## 17 了解世界趋势对于学生来说相当重要。

It's very important for students to know the current trend of the world.

**句型** It is + adj. + of / for sb. + to do...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

It is + adj. + of / for sb. + to do... 表示“(对)某人来说……”,是非常常见的句型。其中的 it 是形式主语,后面的动词不定式才是真正的主语。另外,此句型中用 of 还是 for,取决于它前面的形容词,若形容词表示的是人的品质、性格,例如: kind (仁慈的)、nice (好心的)、clever (聪明的)、right (正直的)等,需用 of;若形容词只是对动作的一般性描述,例如: difficult (困难的)、dangerous (危险的)、important (重要的)等,则用 for。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Helen: It's kind of you to explain this question to me, Emma. I understand it very well now.

Emma: No problem. I am glad that you understand it now.

Helen: Thank you very much.

Emma: Not at all.

海伦: 艾玛, 你人真好, 能解释这个问题给我听。我现在已经很清楚了。

艾玛: 没什么啦。我很高兴你现在懂了。

海伦: 非常谢谢你。

艾玛: 不客气。



## 情境 2

Mother: Oh, my! What are you doing, Jack? Don't you know it's dangerous for children to play with fire?

Son: Mom, I am not a child anymore.

Mother: No, you are always a child for me, honey. So don't you ever play with fire again, OK?

Son: I'm sorry, Mom. I won't do that again.

Mother: Good boy.

妈妈：噢，我的天！你在做什么，杰克？你不知道小孩子玩火很危险的吗？

儿子：妈妈，我已经不是小孩子了。

妈妈：不，亲爱的，在我眼中你一直是个孩子。所以下次不要再玩火了好吗？

儿子：我很抱歉，妈妈。我不会再这么做了。

妈妈：好孩子。

## 情境 3

Old Lady: It's very nice of you to offer me a seat. Thank you, nice lady.

Girl: You're welcome. We all should give seats to the elderly and pregnant women on the bus.

老太太：你让座给我，真是太好了。谢谢你，好心的小姐。

女孩：不用客气。在公共汽车上，我们都应该给老人和孕妇让座。

## 情境 4

Alex: Where is my wallet? Did you see my wallet, Bella?

Bella: No, I didn't. What is in your wallet?

Alex: My ID, driving license, credit cards and some money. Today is really not my day. Those are very important things to me.

Bella: It is very careless of you to lose your wallet.

亚历克斯：我的钱包去哪了？你看到我的钱包了吗，贝拉？

贝拉：没有，你钱包里有什么东西？

亚历克斯：我的身份证，驾照，信用卡，还有一些钱。我今天真倒霉。那些东西对我来说很重要。

贝拉：你把钱包弄丢了，真是太粗心了。

### 情境 5

Alice: Jane, would you tell me how to improve my English?

Jane: I think it is important for you to practice English in your daily life. It is said that practice makes perfect. So just practice more.

Alice: Wow, it is very kind of you to tell me that. Thank you.

Jane: It is not a big deal.

爱丽丝：珍，你能告诉我该怎么让我的英文进步吗？

珍：我想对你来说，在日常生活中练习英语是非常重要的。俗话说熟能生巧嘛，所以就多练习吧。

爱丽丝：哇，你人真好，能告诉我这些。谢谢你。

珍：小事一桩。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 你能帮助我，真好。

---

02. 对我们来说独自完成这项工作很困难。。

---

03. 广泛的阅读对于我们来说是很重要的。

---

04. 他们拒绝采纳这个提议是不明智的。

---

05. 你为我们考虑这么多，真是太好了。

---

## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

**V-ing + is + adj... “做某事是…”**

1. V-ing + is + adj. 句型中 V-ing 是动名词做主语，视为单数名词，后面接形容词作修饰，例如：

**Learning English is an important thing for us.**

(学习英语对我们来说是重要的。)

**Smoking is bad for our health.** (吸烟对我们的健康有害)。

2. 有时为了保持句子通顺，不头重脚轻，通常用形式主语 it 代替主语，而把真正的主语放在后面。例如：

**It's a waste of time arguing about it.** (争论这件事是浪费时间。)

翻译练习正确答案：

01. It's very kind of you to help me.

02. It's difficult for us to finish the job all by ourselves.

03. It's important for us to read extensively.

04. It's unwise of them to turn down the proposal.

05. It's kind of you to think so much for us.

Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽！（程度分级：高中第一～二册）

## 18 纳达尔不认为这次发球出界了。 Nadal doesn't think that this serve is outside.

句型

Sb. do / does not think / suppose / believe that...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

Sb. do / does not think / suppose / believe that... 意指“某人不觉得 / 不认为 / 不相信……”。此句型用来表示某人的观点或想法，其后接以关系代名词 that 所引导的名词从句。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Sam: Do you believe that 2012 will be the end of the world?

Tom: No, I don't believe that the earth will be destroyed. It is just a rumor.

Sam: I hope so.

山姆：你认为 2012 会是世界末日吗？

汤姆：不，我不认为地球会毁灭。那只是谣言。

山姆：希望如此。

### 情境 2

David: Eric, which team do you think will win the World Cup?

Eric: I think Brazil will be the champion. It has won the World Cup for many times.



David: That's true. But I don't agree with you. I think Argentina may win the game. They have performed and coordinated very well this year.

Eric: Nobody knows the result until the end of the game.

David: You are right. Nothing is impossible.

大卫：艾瑞克，你觉得今年的世界杯哪支队伍会赢？

艾瑞克：我认为巴西队会是冠军。他们已经赢得了好几次世界杯冠军了。

大卫：你说得没错。但我和你意见不同。我认为阿根廷有可能赢得冠军。

他们在今年的比赛中一直打得不错，调度得也不错。

艾瑞克：到比赛结束为止，没有人能知道结果。

大卫：你说得对。没有不可能的事。

### 情境 3

Daughter: Dad, I want to buy a car of my own.

Father: Sweet heart, I don't think that you need one.

Daughter: Why not? Dad, I don't want to go to work by bike every day.

Father: But I think it is very good for your health.

女儿：爸爸，我想买辆属于自己的车。

爸爸：甜心，我不认为你有必要买车。

女儿：为什么？爸爸，我不想每天骑自行车上班。

爸爸：但我认为那样对你身体很好。

### 情境 4

Bella: Ah, it's hard to find a job nowadays.

Sarah: I can't agree more. But the government has taken some actions to improve the situation.

Bella: I don't suppose that the situation will improve. There are so many graduates each year, but jobs are few and limited.

Sarah: It's really true.

贝拉：哦，现在找工作还真难。

莎拉：我非常同意。但是政府已经采取一些行动来改善这种情形。

贝拉：我不认为形势将会得到改善。每年有这么多的毕业生，但工作很少而且有限。

莎拉：确实如此。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 她不相信我说的话。

---

02. 我不认为现在还是交通高峰时间。

---

03. 很多人不相信空气有重量。

---

04. 我不认为她们能准时抵达。

---

05. 我不认为你知道这个消息。

---

翻译练习正确答案：

---

01. She does not believe what I said.

---

02. I don't suppose that it is still the rush hour.

---

03. Many people do not believe that air has weight.

---

04. I don't think that they can arrive on time.

---

05. I don't suppose that you know this information.

---

Day 17

Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽! (程度分级: 高中第一~二册)

## 19 是时候让贝拉来决定她未来的职业了。

It's time for Bella to decide her career.

句型 It's time (for sb.) to do sth.

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

It's time (for sb.) to do sth. ... 意为“该是做某事的时候了”, 介词 for 可接所指称的对象, 用以表示其后所表示的动作就是这个 sb. 所做的。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Mother: It's time to get up, baby!

Son: Mom, I'm very tired. I want to sleep for a little bit longer.

Mother: You will be late for school!

Son: Mom, I don't feel well today. I don't want to go to school.

Mother: Let me see, baby. Oh, you have a little fever. You should rest at home. I will call your teacher.

Son: Thank you, Mom.

妈妈: 该起床了, 宝贝!

儿子: 妈妈, 我觉得好累, 我想多睡一会儿。

妈妈: 你上学会迟到的!

儿子: 妈妈, 我今天感觉不舒服。我不想去上学。

妈妈: 让我看看, 宝贝。噢, 你有点发烧。你应该在家里休息。我会打电话给你的老师。

儿子: 谢谢你, 妈。

## 情境 2

Nurse: It's time to take medicine, Jason.

Jason: Err..., this kind of medicine tastes very bitter. I don't want to take it.

Nurse: It's bad for your illness, Jason. Take the medicine, and then I will give you chocolate, OK?

Jason: That'll be great. Thank you.

护士：该吃药了，杰森。

杰森：呃……，这种药吃起来很苦。我不想吃。

护士：杰森，这样对你病情不好。你先吃药，然后我会给你巧克力，好不好？

杰森：太棒了。谢谢你。

## 情境 3

Mom: It is time to have breakfast, my son!

Son: Sorry, Mom. I'm afraid I have no time. I have to hurry, or I will be late for school.

Mom: It's bad for your health to skip your breakfast.

Son: I really have no time. Goodbye, Mom!

妈妈：儿子，该吃早饭了！

儿子：抱歉，妈妈。我恐怕没时间吃早饭了。我得快点，我快要迟到了。

妈妈：不吃早餐对你身体不好。

儿子：我真的没时间了。再见，妈妈。

## 情境 4

Bill: Spring comes. Trees are green and flowers bloom. It's time to go for an outing.

Jack: Yeah! That sounds great. I want to join your spring outing.

Bill: OK. Let's plan for it.

比尔：春天来了。树木绿了，花儿开了。该是时候去郊游了。

杰克：是的！听起来真棒。我想加入你的春游行列。

比尔：好的，让我们来计划一下吧。



## 情境 5

Vicky: Jessie, it's time to have dinner. Do you want to go with me?

Jessie: OK. Where do you want to go?

Vicky: There is a new restaurant near our school. Let's go and have a try.

Jessie: OK. Let's go.

维姬：杰西，该吃晚饭了。你要跟我一起去吗？

杰西：好呀，你想去哪里？

维姬：我们学校附近有一家新餐馆，我们去试试吧。

杰西：好，走吧。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 现在是你该去睡觉的时候了。

---

02. 现在该登机了。

---

03. 是时候休息了。

---

04. 现在是我们该动身的时候了。

---

05. 是我们采取行动的时候了。

---

## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

该是...的时候了

**It's (high / about) time that...** 此句型中为表示应做而未做的假设语气，由关系代名词 **that** 所引导的从句需要用虚拟语气，用一般过去时表示对现在的假设。

**It is time (that) we had classes.** (是我们该上课的时候了。)

**It is high time that we started.** (我们该出发了。)

翻译练习正确答案：

---

01. It is time for you to go to bed.

---

02. It's time to go aboard.

---

03. It is time to have a rest.

---

04. It is time for us to start off.

---

05. It is time for us to take actions.

---

Level 2 可以开始简单英语会话喽! (程度分级: 高中第一~二册)

## 20 李娜是如此努力以至于她 可以赢得法网冠军。

Lina works so hard that she could win the first prize in French Open Tennis Championship.

句型 so... that...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. so... that... 意为“如此……以致于……”，由 so 引导形容词或副词，用以形容由 that 引导的从句，并表示两者之间的因果关系。例如：

Mary is so beautiful that all the boys in her school love her.  
(玛丽是如此的漂亮，以至于她学校里的所有男孩都喜欢她。)

2. so... that... 也可为 so that..., 连接两个从句，直接表示两个从句间的因果关系。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Wife: Dear, can you give me a hand?

Husband: Yes, of course. What's it?

Wife: Let's move the bed so that I can sweep the floor.

Husband: No problem.

妻子：亲爱的，你能帮我一个忙吗？

丈夫：当然可以呀。什么事？

妻子：我们把床移动一下，这样我就可以扫地了。

丈夫：没问题。

**情境 2**

Bob: Tracy, have you changed your phone number? I have called you for many times, but you never answered.

Tracy: Yes, I did, and my new number is 537578.

Bob: Wait. I want to find something to write it down so that I can remember it.

鲍勃：特蕾西，你换号码了吗？我打了几次电话给你都没人接。

特蕾西：是的，我换号码了。我的新号码是 537578。

鲍勃：噢，等等，我想找张纸记才好记住。

**情境 3**

Sales: May I help you?

Customer: Yes, please. I want to buy a dress for myself.

Sales: Dresses are over there. This way, please.

Customer: The blue one looks good. Can I try it on?

Sales: Sure.

Customer: Oh, it's too small for me. Do you have a larger one?

Sales: I'm sorry. This is the largest one in our store.

Customer: Ah, that's too bad. I think I must lose some weight so that I can get in the dress.

店员：我为您服务吗？

顾客：是的，我想帮自己买件裙子。

店员：裙子都在那里，这边请。

顾客：那件蓝色的看起来不错，我可以试穿吗？

店员：当然可以。

顾客：噢，这对我来说太小了。有大一点的吗？

店员：很抱歉，这是我们店里最大的了。

顾客：噢，真糟糕。我想我得减肥，才能挤得进这件裙子。

**情境 4**

Teacher: Carl, please read louder so that all the students can hear you.

Student: Yes, sir.



Teacher: Good, please continue.

老师：卡尔，请你念大声点，这样一来所有同学都能够听见。

学生：好的，老师。

老师：很好，请继续。

### 情境 5

Jim: Excuse me. Could you tell me how to get to the Ocean Park? I'm a stranger here.

Joe: Certainly. You just go straight down this street. Turn right at the first traffic light and keep on going till the second traffic light. And then turn left.

Jim: It sounds a little bit complicate.

Joe: That's fine. I will write it down for you so that you will not get lost.

Jim: Thank you very much.

Joe: You are welcome.

吉姆：不好意思。你能告诉我怎么去海洋公园吗？我是外地人。

乔：当然。你只要沿着这条街一直走下去，在第一个红绿灯右转，一直走到第二个红绿灯然后左转就可以了。

吉姆：听起来有点复杂。

乔：没关系。我帮你写下来，这样你就不会迷路了。

吉姆：非常感谢你。

乔：不客气。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 努力用功，以便以后你可以找个好工作。

02. 请把窗户打开，以便我们可以呼吸些新鲜的空气。

03. 她们没搭到车，所以上课迟到了。

---

04. 演讲者说话很大声，以便所有的人都能听得清楚。

---

05. 为了今年能更进步，我每天花了更多时间学英语。

---

翻译练习正确答案：

01. Study hard so that you can find a good job in the future.

---

02. Please open the window so that we can have some fresh air.

---

03. They missed the bus so that they were late for class.

---

04. The speaker spoke so loudly that everyone could hear him clearly.

---

05. I spend more time learning English every day so that I can make greater progress this year.

---

Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 21 起床, 否则你开学第一天就要迟到了!

Get up, or you will be late on the first day to school.

句型 or / otherwise...

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

在祈使句后面加上 or / otherwise..., 意为“否则、要不然……”, 是连接两个句子的对等连词, 前面需加上逗号。otherwise 是一种陈述语气, 表示如果不做某事, 结果会怎样……。而 or 就是带有警告威胁之类的语气。

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

#### 情境 1

Wife: Hurry up, or we will miss the train.

Husband: Don't worry, sweet heart. We have thirty minutes left. It is enough for us to get there.

妻子: 快点, 否则我们要错过火车了。

丈夫: 不用担心, 甜心。我们还有 30 分钟。这时间足够我们到那里。

#### 情境 2

Tracy: Why are you still playing the computer, Tina? You will have an exam tomorrow. Prepare for it now, or you will fail the exam.

Tina: Just for another ten minutes, OK?

Tracy: No, shut off the computer right now, or I will tell Dad.

Tina: Please don't tell dad, dear sister. I am shutting it off now.  
Tracy: Good.

特蕾西：蒂娜，你为什么还在玩电脑？你明天要考试。现在快准备吧，否则你会不及格的。

蒂娜：我再玩 10 分钟，好吗？

特蕾西：不行，现在马上关掉电脑，否则我就告诉爸爸。

蒂娜：拜托不要告诉爸爸，亲爱的姐姐。我马上把电脑关掉。

特蕾西：很好。

### 情境 3

Bob: Hey, Tom. I didn't see you in the meeting yesterday.

Tom: I was sick yesterday, otherwise I would have attended the meeting.

Bob: What a pity!

Tom: It is OK. My colleague took notes for me.

鲍勃：嗨，汤姆。昨天开会我怎么没看到你呀。

汤姆：我昨天生病了，要不然我就去参加会议了。

鲍勃：那太可惜了！

汤姆：没关系。我同事帮我记笔记了。

### 情境 4

Manager: Nick, why did you make the same mistake again? Don't you know any mistake could ruin the business?

Nick: Sorry, sir. I will be more careful next time.

Manager: Work harder or you are about to be fired.

Nick: Err, I promise I won't do it next time.

Manager: Please keep what you said in mind.

经理：尼克，你为什么又犯同样的错误了？你不知道任何失误都可能毁了这笔生意吗？

尼克：抱歉。我下次会更小心的。

经理：你要更努力，否则就会被解雇。

尼克：嗯，我保证不会了。

经理：请把你说的话好好记住。



# 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 穿上外套，要不然你会感冒的。

02. 我们得快点，不然就没座位了。

03. 把握机会，不然你会后悔的。

04. 不许动，否则我开枪。

05. 我们必须同心协力，否则就会失败。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. Put on your coat, or you'll catch a cold.

02. We'll have to hurry, otherwise we may not get a seat.

03. Seize the chance, otherwise you'll regret it.

04. Don't move, or I'll shoot.

05. We must pull together, or we will fail.

Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 22 你每天水喝得越多, 你就会越健康。

The more water you drink every day,  
the healthier you will be.

**句型** the + 比较级, the + 比较级

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

the + 比较级, the + 比较级, 意为“越……, 就越……”, 表示一方的程度随着另一方的变化而变化。第一个“the + 比较级”表示条件, 第二个“the + 比较级”才是句子强调的部份。整句话表示随着第一个“the + 比较级”改变, 第二个“the + 比较级”也随着改变, 强调两者之间的连动关系。

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

#### 情境 1

Writer: When should I hand in the files?

Editor: The sooner you hand in the files, the better it would be.

Writer: I will try my best to make it as early as possible. But when is the deadline?

Editor: The end of the month.

Writer: OK. I get it.

作者: 我应该什么时候交稿?

编辑: 你越快交稿, 当然越好呀。

作者: 我会努力尽早交稿。但是截止日期是什么时候呢?

编辑：这个月底。

作者：好的。我知道了。

## 情境 2

Carl: Did you read the newspaper today?

David: Not yet. What is it?

Carl: A director was sent to the prison for corruption and bribery.

David: He already had so much. Why did he still do that?

Carl: Don't you know the more you have, the more you want?

David: I can't agree more.

卡尔：你看了今天的报纸了吗？

大卫：还没。怎么了？

卡尔：一位局长由于贪污受贿进监狱了。

大卫：他已经拥有那么多了。为什么还那么做呢？

卡尔：你不知道拥有的越多，想要的也越多吗？

大卫：你说的真好。

## 情境 3

Husband: Darling, when should we start off tomorrow?

Wife: The earlier, the better.

Husband: But I am not sure if I can get up so early.

Wife: Don't worry, honey. I will wake you up.

Husband: Thank you, darling.

丈夫：亲爱的，我们明天什么时候出发？

妻子：越早越好。

丈夫：但是我不确定我能不能那么早起。

妻子：别担心，亲爱的。我会叫你起床的。

丈夫：谢谢你，亲爱的。

## 情境 4

Emily: I heard that you are learning piano, Catherine.

Catherine: Yes, I am. I have learned piano for a month, but I still can't play very well.

Emily: Don't give up, Catherine. You just need more practice. The more practice you have, the better you could be.

Catherine: Thank you very much for encouraging me.

Emily: Don't mention it.

埃米莉：凯瑟琳，我听说你现在正在学钢琴。

凯瑟琳：没错。我已经学一个月了，但还是弹得不是很好。

埃米莉：不要放弃，凯瑟琳。你只是需要多练习。你练得越多，就弹得越好。

凯瑟琳：非常谢谢你鼓励我。

埃米莉：不客气。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 这本书我越读越喜欢。

02. 你出发得越早，回来得就越早。

03. 你越努力，进步就越快。

04. 你练习得越多，理解得就越透彻。。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. The more I read the book, the more I like it.

02. The earlier you start off, the sooner you'll be back.

03. The harder you work, the more progress you'll make.

04. The more you practice, the better you can understand.



Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 23 我恐怕无法去看Lady Gaga的北京演唱会了。

I'm afraid I can't go to Lady Gaga's concert in Beijing.

句型 I'm afraid (that) ...

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

I'm afraid (that) ... 意指“我恐怕……”，以关系代名词 that 引导一个名词从句，表示以较婉转的语气提出异议或拒绝对方请求。因为关系代名词 that 用以引导名词从句，故可以省略。

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

#### 情境 1

Jim: Tomorrow is your birthday. Will your parents come to visit you, Bill?

Bill: Err... I'm afraid that they might have forgot it.

Jim: I don't think so. Maybe they want to give you a surprise.

Bill: I hope so.

吉姆：明天是你的生日。你父母会来看你吗，比尔？

比尔：嗯……恐怕他们已经忘记我的生日了。

吉姆：我不那么想。也许他们是想给你一个惊喜吧。

比尔：但愿吧。

#### 情境 2

Jessie: Can you help me to solve this math question, Cindy?

Cindy: I am sorry. I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm not good at math.

Jessie: That's fine. I will ask someone else for help. Thank you anyway.

Cindy: Don't mention it.

杰西：你能帮我解这题数学吗，辛迪？

辛迪：很抱歉。恐怕我帮不了你。我不擅长数学。

杰西：没关系。我找其他人帮忙好了。还是谢谢你。

辛迪：不客气。

### 情境 3

Bruce: I'm afraid I must say goodbye now. I will miss you all.

Boys: We will, too. Don't forget to write to us.

Bruce: OK. Goodbye, guys.

Boys: Goodbye, Bruce.

布鲁斯：恐怕现在我得和你们说再见了。我会想你们所有人的。

男孩们：我们也是，不要忘了写信给我们。

布鲁斯：没问题。大家再见。

男孩们：再见，布鲁斯。

### 情境 4

Student: Good morning, Professor Liu.

Teacher: Good morning.

Student: Can I ask you a question, sir?

Teacher: Of course you can.

Student: I wonder if I pass the exam.

Teacher: I'm afraid you didn't.

学生：刘教授，早上好。

老师：早上好。

学生：老师，我能问个问题吗？

老师：当然可以。

学生：我想知道我这次考试是不是及格了。

老师：恐怕你没有及格。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 恐怕我现在得离开了。

02. 恐怕我不能和你一起去。

03. 恐怕我们帮不了你。

04. 恐怕我不同意你的观点。

05. 恐怕他没有足够的时间。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. I'm afraid (that) I have to leave now.

02. I'm afraid (that) I couldn't go with you.

03. We are afraid (that) we can't help you.

04. I'm afraid (that) I can't agree with you.

05. I'm afraid (that) he doesn't have enough time.

Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 24 罗杰·费德勒就是那个打破多项世界网球纪录的人。

It is Roger Federer who broke many world records of tennis.

**句型** It is / was... that / who...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

It is / was... that / who... 此强调句句型是用来强调句子中的某一部分, 可以是主语、动词、或是宾语。在这个句型中, 以形式主语 it 代替被强调的成分, 并以关系代名词引导的形容词从句形容强调的部份。如果被强调的部份是表示人的主语, 关系代名词需用 who 或 that。如果是其他不是表示人的部份, 关系代名词则一律使用 that。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Ricky: Mary, I heard you are going to get married next week. Is it true?

Mary: What? Who told you this?

Ricky: It is Wendy who is spreading the news.

Mary: She is just gossiping. I will have a talk with her.

瑞奇: 玛丽, 我听说你下星期要结婚了。是真的吗?

玛丽: 什么? 谁告诉你的?

瑞奇: 是温蒂在散布这个消息。

玛丽: 她只是在八卦。我会跟她好好谈谈。



## 情境 2

Julie: Who is that hot girl? She is very pretty.

Kate: The girl in red skirt? It is Catherine.

Julie: Catherine? Is she Ricky's ex-girlfriend?

Kate: Yes. It is she who broke up with Ricky a few days ago.

朱莉：那个辣妹是谁呀？她真漂亮。

凯特：那个穿红裙子的女孩？那是凯瑟琳。

朱莉：凯瑟琳？她是瑞奇的前女友？

凯特：是的。就是她前几天和瑞奇分手。

## 情境 3

Teacher: Can anybody tell me who broke this window?

Class leader: It is Jack who broke the window.

Teacher: Great. Please ask him to come to my office after school.

Class leader: Yes, sir.

老师：谁能告诉我是谁把窗户打碎了？

班长：是杰克把窗户打碎的。

老师：很好。请你叫他放学后到我办公室来。

班长：好的，老师。

## 情境 4

Tina: Who makes the decisions in your family, George?

George: Most of the time, it is my mom who makes the decision. But some important decisions are made by my dad.

Tina: My dad also makes the final decision in my family.

George: That's not strange at all.

蒂娜：乔治，你们家是谁做决定？

乔治：大部分是我妈做决定。但是有些重要的事是我爸决定。

蒂娜：我家总是我爸做决定。

乔治：这一点也不奇怪。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 我是去年夏天学会游泳的。

---

02. 她们是三点钟回来的。

---

03. 是他问话的方式让我很心烦。

---

04. 她们的会议是明天开。

---

05. 那个老太太就是在银行前面被打劫的。

---

翻译练习正确答案：

01. It was last summer that I learned to swim.

02. It was three o'clock that they came back.

03. It was the way he asked that really made me upset.

04. It is tomorrow that they will have a meeting.

05. It is in front of the bank that the old lady was robbed.

Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 25 这很明显是裁判误判了。 It is obvious that the judge made a mistake.

**句型** It is obvious / clear that...

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明 Sentence Patterns Introduction

It is obvious / clear that... 意思为“很明显 / 清楚……”，此句型中 it 是形式主语，用来代替由 that 引导的名词从句。这个句型也是强调句的一种，用来强调后面名词从句的“很明显 / 清楚……”的含意。

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话 Dialogue Practice

#### 情境 1

Eric: Oh, that's too bad. We failed again, Philip.

Philip: It is obvious that we must try something else.

Eric: I can't agree more. I don't want to fail once again.

Philip: Let's discuss with others.

Eric: OK. Let's go.

艾瑞克：噢，真糟糕。我们又失败了，菲利普。

菲利普：很显然我们必须试试其他方法。

艾瑞克：我非常同意。我不想再失败了。

菲利普：让我们和其他人讨论一下吧。

艾瑞克：好的。走吧。

#### 情境 2

Wife: It smells really bad, honey. Can't you give up smoking? It is obvious that smoking is harmful to health.

Husband: Darling, I want to quit smoking, too. But it is really hard.

Wife: I can help you.

Husband: Thank you, darling.

妻子：真是太难闻了，亲爱的。你就不能戒烟吗？很明显吸烟是有害健康的。

丈夫：亲爱的，我也想戒烟。可是真的太难了。

妻子：我可以帮你。

丈夫：亲爱的，谢谢你。

---

### 情境 3

Husband: It is clear that our daughter wants to learn dancing.

Why don't you agree?

Wife: I think studying is the most important thing for her as a student.

Husband: She can have some hobbies for fun.

Wife: That's true. But she must study hard first.

Husband: I think she can have hobbies and studies at the same time.

Wife: I can't agree no matter how.

Husband: You are too stubborn.

丈夫：很明显我们的女儿想学跳舞。为什么你不同意呢？

妻子：我认为她身为学生，念书才是最重要的事。

丈夫：她可以有自己的兴趣爱好。

妻子：是这样没错。但是她还是应该先好好念书。

丈夫：我认为学习和娱乐之间是不矛盾的。

妻子：不管怎样，我就是不同意。

丈夫：你太固执了。

---

### 情境 4

Susan: I guess that doctor is the killer in the movie.

Paul: No, no, no, you're wrong. It is obvious that the young girl is the killer.

Susan: Oh, really?

Paul: Of course. I bet that it is her.

Susan: OK. Let's wait for the ending.



苏珊：我猜那个医生是这部电影当中的杀手。

保罗：不、不、不，你错了。很明显，那个年轻女孩是杀手。

苏珊：噢，真的吗？

保罗：当然。我赌就是她。

苏珊：好吧。让我们等着看结局吧。

### 情境 5

Ben: Oh, my god. Where is my mobile phone? Did you see my mobile phone, Ann?

Ann: Yes, I think it is in your yellow bag.

Ben: Oh, thank you very much. I can't live without it.

Ann: It's clear that nowadays mobile phones play a very important role in our daily life.

Ben: I can't agree more.

本：噢，我的天。我的手机在哪里？你看到我的手机了吗，安？

安：嗯，我想它在你黄色包里。

本：噢，太感谢你了。没有它我活不了。

安：很明显，手机在我们的日常生活中扮演着很重要的角色。

本：我非常同意。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 很明显，她在台上非常紧张。

02. 很明显，月球上没有生物。

03. 很明显他在说谎。

04. 很明显，他是我们班上最好的学生。

05. 新来的业务员显然不能胜任自己的工作。

## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

### “看起来好像…”

1. 此句型由形式主语 it 代替由 that 引导的名词从句，用以强调“看起来好像……”。又或者可以用 as if 代替 that。

2. 如果与事实不相符合，that 引导的名词从句则用过一般过去时表示虚拟语气。例如：

**It seems (that) he was late for the train.**

看起来他好像赶不上火车了。

3. **It is / was said (reported / hoped) that...** “据说 / 据报导 / 据悉……” 由形式主语 it 代替由 that 引导的名词从句。

**It is said that the food in this supermarket is cheaper.**

据说超市的食物卖得更便宜。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. **It is obvious that she was terribly nervous on the stage.**

02. **It is clear that there is no life on the moon.**

03. **It is clear that he is lying.**

04. **It is obvious that he is the best student in our class.**

05. **It is obvious that the new salesman is incompetent with his job.**

Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕！（程度分级：高中第三～六册）

## 26 这部电影实在太精彩了， 所以大家都在讨论它。

This is such a good movie that  
everyone is talking about it.

句型 such... that...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. so / such... that... 的意思是“如此……以致于……”常用来表示两者间的因果关系。由副词 so 修饰形容词或副词或是 such 修饰名词，用以强调与其后 that 从句之间的因果关系。例如：

Jane loves movies so much that she goes to the movies more than three times every week. (珍是如此地喜欢电影，以致于她每周去看超过三次电影。)

2. 在 such... that... 句型中，such 修饰名词，但名词前如果有 many (很多，可数)、much (很多，不可数)、(a) few (一些，可数)、(a) little (一些，不可数) 等形容词时，要使用副词 so 来形容这些形容词，因此要用“so... that...”而不能用“such... that...”。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Vivian: I have seen the National Geographic Channel, in which people speak English so fast that I could hardly understand. There are so many new words for me.

Betty: Don't worry. You can try to learn more about the topic.

薇薇安：我已经看了《国家地理》频道了，里面的人英文说得太快了，所以我几乎听不懂。而且对我来说有好多不认识的单字。

贝蒂：不要担心。你可以试着多了解主题。

### 情境 2

Jimmy: What do you think of Dr. Smith?

Catherine: You mean your neighbor, Dr. Smith?

Jimmy: Yes.

Catherine: He has made a donation of fifty hundred thousand dollars to the Childcare Foundation. He is such a selfless man that everybody respects him.

吉米：你觉得史密斯医生怎么样？

凯瑟琳：你是说你的邻居史密斯医生吗？

吉米：是的。

凯瑟琳：他刚捐给儿童关怀基金会一笔 50 万的捐款。他是如此无私的人，所以大家都尊敬他。

### 情境 3

Donna: Jessie, I am so nervous that I'm afraid I can say nothing in front of the interviewer.

Jessie: Take it easy. Believe in yourself, Donna.

Donna: Thank you, Jessie. I feel better now.

唐娜：杰西，我好紧张，所以我怕我在面试官面前会什么也说不出。

杰西：放轻松。对自己有信心，唐娜。

唐娜：谢谢你，杰西。我现在感觉好多了。

### 情境 4

Tina: Jack, can you give me a hand? This is such a heavy desk that I can't move it.

Jack: No problem. It is really too heavy for a girl to move.

Tina: Thank you so much.

Jack: You're welcome.

蒂娜：杰克，你能帮我一下吗？这个桌子太重了，我搬不动它。

杰克：没问题。对一个女孩子来说，这个桌子的确太重了。



蒂娜：真的很谢谢你。

杰克：不客气。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 那幅画是那样好看，以致于大家都喜欢它。

02. 有这么多的事要做，所以大家都觉得厌烦了。

03. 这部电影很有趣，所以我看了两次。

04. 他年纪太小了，所以不能照顾自己。

05. 她进步得如此之大，所以老师们对她感到很满意。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. The picture is so beautiful that everyone likes it.

02. There was so much work to do that everybody got bored.

03. It was such an interesting film that I have seen it twice.

04. He is so young that he can't take care of himself.

05. She has made such great progress that the teachers are very pleased with her.

Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 27 你最好趁夏天来之前开始减肥。

You'd better begin to lose weight  
before summer comes.

**句型** You had better (not) ... / You'd better (not) ...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. You had better (not)... / You'd better (not) ... 是指“你最好做 / 不做……”, 后接动词原形。
2. 句中的 had better 是固定片语用法, 不随时态做变化, 否定句就直接加上 not, 用 had better not 后接动词原形来表示否定。
3. 此句型用来表示对别人的劝告、建议或一种愿望。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Ken: What's wrong with you, Tim? You look pale.

Tim: I have a stomachache.

Ken: You'd better go to see a doctor.

Tim: I will go after work.

Ken: I think you'd better go now.

Tim: Then, can you help me to ask for a day off?

Ken: No problem.

肯: 你怎么了, 蒂姆? 你看起来脸色好苍白。

蒂姆: 我胃痛。

肯: 你最好去看医生。

蒂姆: 我下班后再去。

肯: 我想你最好现在就去。

蒂姆：那你可以帮我请假吗？

肯：没问题。

### 情境 2

Joe: Kate, I find you are little fatter than before.

Kate: Really? Oh, that's too bad.

Joe: Summer is coming. You'd better watch your diet, Kate.

Kate: I need to exercise more from now.

乔：凯特，我觉得你比以前胖了。

凯特：真的吗？噢，太糟糕了。

乔：夏天要来了，你最好注意你的饮食。

凯特：我从现在起要多运动了！

### 情境 3

Mother: It is cold outside. You'd better put on more clothes.

Son: Thank you, Mom. But I have worn a lot.

Mother: Anyway, take care of yourself.

Son: OK. Mom.

妈妈：外面很冷。你最好多穿点衣服。

儿子：谢谢妈。但是我已经穿很多了。

妈妈：总之要照顾好自己，儿子。

儿子：好的，妈妈。

### 情境 4

Mr. Steven: Excuse me, could you please tell me how to get to the Museum?

Passer-by: It's far from here. You'd better take a taxi.

Mr. Steven: OK. Thank you.

Passer-by: Not at all.

史蒂芬先生：不好意思，你能告诉我怎么去博物馆吗？

路人：博物馆离这里很远。你最好搭出租车去。

史蒂芬先生：好的，谢谢。

路人：不客气。

## 情境 5

Mike: You'd better prepare for the examination, Matt.

Matt: I don't think the exam will be very difficult for me.

Mike: You'd better change your attitude, or you will fail.

Matt: Maybe you're right. I have been too lazy lately.

迈克：你最好为考试做做准备，麦特。

麦特：我觉得这次考试对我来说不会很难。

迈克：你最好改变这种态度，不然你会不及格的。

麦特：也许你说得对。最近我一直太懒惰了。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 已经晚了。你该回家了。

---

02. 你最好早点睡觉，要不然你明天上学会迟到。

---

03. 你仔细考虑一下。

---

04. 你最好安静点。

---

05. 你最好不要错过末班公共汽车。

---



## 04 延伸句型加分学习

Learning Plus!

**be (not) supposed to... 应该……**

1. be supposed to... 其后接动词原形。当主语是“人”时，意为“应该……”、“被期望……”，用来表示劝告、建议、义务、责任等，相当于助动词 should (应该)。例如：

You are supposed to support your parents. (你应该赡养你的父母。)

2. be supposed to... 的主语是“物”时，表示“本应……；本该……”，表示“某事本应该发生而没有发生”。例如：

The bus was supposed to arrive half an hour ago.

(公共汽车本应在半小时之前到达。)

3. 当 be supposed to... 后面接“have + 过去分词”时，表示“应该已经做某事，却没做……”。如：

He is supposed to have arrived an hour ago. (他应该一小时前就到了。)

4. be supposed to... 也可以以形式主语 it 当主语，其后接以 that 引导的名词从句，表示“某事应该……”。例如：

It is supposed that we all love our country. (我们都应该要爱我们的国家。)

翻译练习正确答案：

01. It's late. You'd better go home.

02. You'd better go to bed early or you will be late for school tomorrow.

03. You'd better think it over.

04. You'd better be quiet.

05. You'd better not miss the last bus.

Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 28 就算要排队等一个小时 我也要买到这家店的甜甜圈。

Even though I have to wait for an hour,  
I still want to buy donuts from this shop.

句型 Even though / if...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. Even though / if... 为连词, 意思为“即使……”。所连接的从句表示一个假设的条件, 因此需用假设语气, 以一般现在时代替一般将来时。例如:

Even if it rains, the carnival will not be canceled.

(即使下雨, 嘉年华也不会被取消。)

2. Even if 的从句中含有强烈的假定性, 一般引导把握不大或假设的事情; even though 引出的是事实。

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Emily: It rains heavily outside. Will your brother come?

Catherine: He will come on time even though it rains.

Emily: Oh, he is so kind.

Catherine: That's right. He is the best.

埃米莉: 外面雨下很大。你哥哥会来吗?

凯瑟琳: 即使下雨, 他还是会准时来的。

埃米莉: 噢, 他真是太好了。

凯瑟琳: 没错。他最棒了。

## 情境 2

Carl: What's the result? Did you win the soccer game yesterday, David?

David: We lost the game even though we tried our best.

Carl: Oh, what a pity. Don't be sad. Keep going!

David: Thanks.

卡尔：结果怎么样？你们昨天足球赛赢了吗，大卫？

大卫：虽然我们已经尽力了，我们还是输了。

卡尔：哦，太可惜了。别难过。继续加油。

大卫：谢谢。

## 情境 3

Sam: I don't like Sophia.

Tracy: Why not? She is such a good girl.

Sam: She always sticks to what she thinks is right even though she is wrong.

Tracy: Yes, she is little stubborn. But she is still a good girl.

山姆：我不喜欢索菲娅。

特蕾西：为什么不？她是那么好的一个女孩。

山姆：她总是坚持她认为对的事，即使那根本是错的。

特蕾西：是的，她是有点固执。但她还是个好女孩。

## 情境 4

Simon: Tomorrow is Bob's birthday. Did he invite you to his party?

Frank: No, even if I was invited, I wouldn't go.

Simon: Hmm..., I don't want to go, neither.

西蒙：明天是鲍勃的生日。他邀请你去他的派对了吗？

法兰克：没有，即使我受邀了，我也不会去。

西蒙：嗯……，我也不想去。

## 情境 5

Betty: Look at this photo. The people look so happy in it. Where did you take this photo?

Susan: I took this photo in the mountains. People there are always smiling even if they are very poor.

Betty: Woo, I like these simple, optimistic, and kind-hearted people.

贝蒂：噢，看这张照片。里面的人看起来很幸福。你在哪里拍的这张照片？

苏珊：我在山里照的。住在那里的人总是一直保持笑容即使他们很穷。

贝蒂：哇，我喜欢这些纯朴、乐观、又善良的人们。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 即使你不会成功，他们也会支持你。

02. 即使明天下雨，我们也绝不改变计划。

03. 虽然工作艰苦，我还是很喜欢。

04. 即使我们在工作中取得了好成绩，也不应该自满。

05. 即使他知道这个秘密也不会泄漏出去。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. They will stand by you even if you don't succeed.

02. Even if it rains tomorrow, we won't change our plan.

03. Even though it's hard work, I enjoy it a lot.

04. Even if we achieve great success in our work, we should not be proud.

05. Even though he knows it, he'll not let out the secret.



Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 29 我妈要我打扫房间。

My mother had me clean the room.

句型 have + sb. ...

### 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

1. 动词 have 可作为使役动词表示命令、要求或指使之意, 其后接动词原形, 常用句型为 “have + 人 + 动词原形”, 意思是 “让某人去做某事”。

2. 比起另一个使役动词 make, have 的用法较为委婉、客气, 而 make 通常带有 “逼使、强迫” 的含意。例如:

Our teacher made us clean the toilet. (我们老师叫我们去扫厕所。)

3. 若要表示被动, 如 “让某人 / 某事被……”, 则使役动词 have 及 make 后改用过去分词。例如:

The police had the thief arrested. (警方逮捕了那个小偷。)

### 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

#### 情境 1

Ricky: Why can't you play basketball with us?

Nick: My mother had me clean the room. I need to have my room cleaned before she comes back.

瑞奇: 你为什么不能跟我们一起打篮球呢?

尼克: 我妈要我打扫房间。我得在她回来之前把房间打扫好。

### 情境 2

Gary : Mr. Chen, would you have someone fix the faucet? It's been leaking for two days.

Mr. Chen : OK. OK. I'll have it fixed today.

盖瑞：陈先生，你能不能找人把水龙头修一下？已经漏水漏了两天了。  
陈先生：好的好的。我今天会把它修好。

---

### 情境 3

Carl : This work is an urgent. It needs to be done by five o'clock today.

Helen : In that case, I'll have the team work on it right now.

卡尔：这项工作是急件，要在今天 5 点之前做好。  
海伦：那样的话，我会让大家现在马上就开始做这件事。

---

### 情境 4

Jennifer : Hey, Tom. What's new?

Tom : I'm thinking to job-hop. My boss always has me work overtime without giving me overtime pay.

珍妮弗：嘿，汤姆。有什么新鲜事吗？  
汤姆：我打算要换工作了。我老板老是要我加班，却不给加班费。

---

### 情境 5

Mark : Cindy is not at home now. Do you want to leave her a message?

Catherine : Yes. Please tell her that Catherine had called.

Mark : OK. I'll let her know and have her call you back.

Catherine : Thank you.

马克：辛迪现在不在家。你要留言给她吗？  
凯瑟琳：好，请告诉她凯瑟琳打电话来了。  
马克：没问题。我会让她知道并叫她回电。  
凯瑟琳：谢谢你。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 我的上司派我到机场去接布朗先生。

02. 玛丽要珍妮在她出门时帮她照顾孩子们。

03. 灰姑娘的继母要她做所有的家事。

04. 你可以找人来帮我搬这些书吗？

05. 妈妈要我在晚饭后洗碗。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. My supervisor had me pick up Mr. Brown at the airport.

02. Mary had Jennie baby-sit her kids for her while she was away.

03. Cinderella's stepmother had her do all the housework.

04. Could you have someone carry these books for me?

05. Mom had me do the dishes after dinner.

Level 3 看到外国人也不用怕! (程度分级: 高中第三~六册)

## 30 不管发生什么事, 我都一定会支持我的家人。

No matter what happens, I will support my family.

**句型** no matter + 疑问词 ...

## 01 语法句型常用情境说明

Sentence Patterns Introduction

No matter 意为“不管、无论……”，其后接疑问词 what (什么)、which (哪一个)、who (谁)、whom (谁→宾语)、where (哪里)、whose (谁的)、when (何时)、how (如何)，由这些关系代名词引导的名词从句作为强调的部分。例如：

No matter where you go, I will go with you. (无论你去哪里，我都跟你去。)

No matter whose bag it is, we should give it back.

(无论这是谁的袋子，我们都应该要还回去。)

No matter how bad the weather is, we are going to Kaohsiung.

(无论天气有多糟，我们都会去高雄。)

## 02 语法句型示范情境会话

Dialogue Practice

### 情境 1

Wendy: I think Mr. Bruce doesn't like me.

Mary: Why do you say so?

Wendy: No matter how hard I try, he always picks my fault with my work.

Mary: Hmm..., I suppose that he just has a high expectation on you.

Wendy: Oh, really? I hope so.



温蒂：我想布鲁斯先生不喜欢我。

玛丽：为什么这么说呢？

温蒂：无论我多么努力，他总是挑剔我的工作。

玛丽：嗯……我认为他只是对你期望太高了。

温蒂：哦，真的吗？希望如此呀。

## 情境 2

Wife: Honey, thank you for helping me get through all these.

Husband: Oh, sweet heart. No matter what happens, you know I will always be there for you.

Wife: Thank you very much. I will always love you, honey.

Husband: So do I.

妻子：亲爱的，谢谢你陪着我度过了这一切。

丈夫：噢，甜心。无论发生什么事，你知道我都会在你身边陪你的。

妻子：真谢谢你。我会永远爱你，亲爱的。

丈夫：我也是。

## 情境 3

Daughter: Dad, I am going to lose my mind. Things just don't go right, no matter how hard I try.

Dad: Life is no plain sailing. So just be yourself and keep on going no matter what happens. You know I always have faith in you.

女儿：爸爸，我真的快要崩溃了。不管我怎么努力，事情总是不顺利。

爸爸：人生的道路并非平坦的康庄大道。所以不管发生什么，只要做好自己，继续前进就可以了。你知道我一直对你很有信心。

## 情境 4

Blair: Don't trust Alice, no matter what she says. She is a liar.

Joy: A liar? Why do you say that?

Blair: She has lied to me for several times. Whenever I forgive her, she lies again.

Joy: Oh, I see.

布莱尔：不管爱丽丝说什么，都不要相信她。她是个骗子。

乔伊：骗子？为什么你这么说呢？

布莱尔：她已经跟我说了好几次谎。每当我原谅她，她就又说谎了。  
乔伊：哦，我知道了。

## 03 语法句型翻译练习

Sentence Patterns Exercise

请运用上面学到的句型，试着写出完整的英文句子吧！

01. 不管事情会变怎样，我们都应当尽最大努力。

02. 不管你是谁，你都无权那么做。

03. 不管你做什么，千万不要失去自我。

04. 不论你在哪里，都得遵守法律。

05. 不管要花多长时间，都要坚持下去。

翻译练习正确答案：

01. No matter what will turn out, we should do our best.

02. No matter who you are, you have no right to do that.

03. No matter what you do, never lose yourself.

04. No matter where you are, you must obey the law.

05. No matter how long it takes, just hang in there.

think 的用法

time 的用法

help 的用法

hurt 的用法

mind 的用法

welcome 用法

单字陷阱  
一词多义使用篇

语法陷阱  
语法观念辨析篇

式

02. 一般过去时 vs. 过去完成

03. 否定疑问句的回答

04. 形容词的词序问题

05. 间接问句的用法

第三阶段：Day 23~30

# 40个不能不闪的语法陷阱

语法陷阱  
语法使用差异篇

单字陷阱  
同义单字辨析篇

ve gone to 之比较

er...or 的混淆

another 的区别

ed 辨析

nes, some time, some times 的混淆

的用法辨析

何时用

即此即此

去

的用法

01. ago vs. before

02. any vs. some

03. asleep vs. sleepy

04. bring vs. take vs. carry

05. hope vs. wish

06. everyday vs. every day

07. fit vs. suit

08. hear vs. listen to

09. speak vs. say vs. talk

10. spend vs. cost

11. travel 与 trip

12. wait vs. expect

13. worth 与 worthy

14. occur vs. happen vs. take place

## 01 ago vs. before

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Kate, come here quickly. This is your favorite TV show. I'm sure you don't want to miss it.

凯特，快过来。这是你最喜欢的电视节目，我想你一定不想错过。

B: Never mind. I have watched it two days before.

无所谓啦，我两天前就看过了。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

ago 和 before 都可用来表示“在……（时间）之前”，但两者的内涵及用法都有相当明显的区别，请见以下说明：

(1-1) ago 用来表示从现在起到过去的某一个“时间点”，通常与“过去时”连用，不与完成时连用，并且不可单独使用，必须搭配时间副词。例如：

This accident just happened 5 minutes ago. (这场意外就发生在五分钟之前。)

一般过去时 + ago → 表示过去单一时间点

(1-2) 当 ago 可与过去完成时连用时，目的则是用来加强语气或希望使语气更生动，表示“早已经”的意思。例如：

I haven't seen you since 3 years ago. (我自从三年前就没见过你了。)

过去完成时 + ago → 强调语气

(2-1) before 则是表示从过去某一个时间点往前推算，或者泛指过去（没有搭配明确的时间点），通常与“过去完成时”或“未来完成时”连用。例如：



Tommy said that he has already finished his project 2 days before.

(汤米说他两天前就已经完成了这个项目。) → 从过去(两天前)往前推算。

(2-2) 若是事件发生在过去, 但没有特定的时间点, 则可单独使用 **before**, 不需连接时间副词, 用来泛指(过去/从前)的时态, 例如:

Have I met you before? (我以前见过你吗?) → 泛指以前, 没有特定时间点。

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 你以前看过熊猫吗?

☒ Have you ever seen a panda ago?

☐ Have you ever seen a panda before?

02. 佩妮会在十点之前回来。

☒ Penny will come back ten o'clock ago.

☐ Penny will come back before ten o'clock.

03. 埃琳娜说她跟丹尼五年前就已经结婚了。

☒ Elena said that she had married Danny five years ago.

☐ Elena said that she had married Danny five years before.

04. 自从 15 年前, 布朗先生就已经在这所学校教英语了。

☒ Mr. Brown taught English in this school since fifteen years ago.

☐ Mr. Brown has taught English in this school since fifteen years ago.

05. 玛丽的奶奶三年前就去世了。

☒ Mary's grandma died three years before.

☐ Mary's grandma died three years ago.

06. 其实我很早以前就认识那个人了。

☒ Actually, I have known that man long time before.

☐ Actually, I have known that man long time ago.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. He asked me whether I had been to Paris \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A ago                      ☐ B before                      ☐ C after
02. The young man told us that 2 years \_\_\_\_\_, he became a journalist and worked in a U.K. press company.  
☐ A after                      ☐ B ago                      ☐ C before
03. The old man \_\_\_\_\_ here since ten years ago.  
☐ A has been                      ☐ B had been                      ☐ C have been
04. I hope I'll finish my homework \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A ten o'clock                      ☐ B ten o'clock ago                      ☐ C before ten o'clock
05. Jack has never been late \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A after                      ☐ B ago                      ☐ C before
06. Lisa, there is a letter for you. It arrived a few days \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A before                      ☐ B ago                      ☐ C after
07. I \_\_\_\_\_ such beautiful scenery before I arrived in Hawaii.  
☐ A never                      ☐ B had never seen                      ☐ C has never seen

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. **B** 他问我以前有没有去过巴黎。
- 
02. **C** 那位年轻人告诉我们，他在两年前成了一位记者，并且任职于一家英国大型媒体公司。
- 
03. **A** 这位老先生自从十年前就在这里了。
- 
04. **C** 我希望在十点以前我可以完成我的作业。
- 
05. **C** 杰克以前从来没有迟到过。
- 
06. **B** 丽莎，那边有一封你的信。几天前就已经寄到了。
- 
07. **B** 在我来到夏威夷之前，我从来没有见过这么美丽的景色。
-

## 02 any vs. some

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: Did you take **some** pictures when you spent your holiday in New York?  
你在纽约度假时有拍任何照片吗?
- B: Yes, I took **some**. Here they are.  
有啊, 我拍了。在这里。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

**some, any** 这两个形容词都可以用来修饰可数名词与不可数名词, 表示 (一些) 的概念, 但两者的用法不同, 请见以下说明:

- (1) **some** 常用在肯定句中, 意为 (一些), 可修饰可数名词的复数形态, 例如: **some desks** (一些桌子); 也可用来修饰不可数名词, 例如: **some ink** (一些墨水)。
- (2) **any** 则常用在否定和疑问句, 意为 (任何一些), 也可用来修饰可数名词的复数形态或不可数名词, 常用于疑问句和否定句, 例如: **There is not any apples left.** (没有剩下任何苹果了。)
- (3) 范例中, A 所说的可数名词 **pictures** 既可以用 **some** 修饰, 也可以用 **any** 修饰, 但此句为一般疑问句, 由上述 (1)、(2) 可知, 句中的 **some** 应改为 **any**。因此正确的说法应为:

Did you take **any** pictures when you spent your holiday in New York?

而 B 所回复的句子 "I took **some**." 为肯定句, 所以应该用 **some**, 句中的 **some** 是指 **some pictures**, 意为 "拍了一些照片"。

- (4) 除上述一般情况以外, 还需要注意以下几种特殊情况:

- (4-1) 在表示建议、反问和请求的疑问句中，或期望得到肯定回答时，多用 **some** 而不用 **any**。例如：

What about some orange juice? (要不要喝点橙汁?)

→ 期望对方喝橙汁。

- (4-2) 当 **any** 表示（任何）时，为强调语法，可以用于肯定句中。例如：

Any student can use this map. (任何学生都可以使用这张地图。)

→ 强调任何一位学生都可以。

- (4-3) 遇到含有否定意义的动词、形容词、副词、介词时要用 **any**，而不用 **some**，如：**deny**（拒绝）、**prevent**（防止）、**unwise**（不睿智的）、**unaware**（没察觉到的）、**hardly**（几乎不地）、**seldom**（不常地）、**without**（没有）、**against**（与……对立）等。

- (4-4) 在表达否定的句子中，如需表达完全否定时，用 **any**，若需表达部分否定，则用 **some**。例如：

I don't need any help. (我不需要任何帮助。) → 完全否定。

Some files are not on my desk. (有些档案不在我桌上。)

→ 部分否定，只有一部分不在我桌上。

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 你要不要来点咖啡？

☒ Would you like any coffee?

☐ Would you like some coffee?

02. 那边有很多小孩子在跟我打招呼，但是他们中间有几个我不认识。

☒ There are plenty of children saying hello to me, but I don't know any of them.

☐ There are plenty of children saying hello to me, but I don't know some of them.

03. 他不是一个诚实的人，因为他否认我曾帮过他任何忙。

☒ He is not an honest person, because he denied I had offered him some help.

☐ He is not an honest person, because he denied I had offered him any help.



04. 由于工作太繁忙, 我几乎没有时间出去旅游了。

☒ I have hardly some time to travel because of the busy work.

☐ I have hardly any time to travel because of the busy work.

05. 杰克被他的老板毫不犹豫地开除了, 因为他老是犯错。

☒ Jake was fired by his boss without some hesitation, because he had always made mistakes.

☐ Jake was fired by his boss without any hesitation, because he had always made mistakes.

06. 玛丽在学校有一些朋友, 但是在家里没有朋友。

☒ Mary has some friends at school, but she doesn't have some at home.

☐ Mary has some friends at school, but she doesn't have any at home.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. Tom is a clever boy and he can answer the teacher's questions without \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty, but Linda answers those questions with \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty.

☐ A any, some

☐ B any, any

☐ C some, any

02. She's too young to do \_\_\_\_\_ work.

☐ A some

☐ B much

☐ C any

03. \_\_\_\_\_ staff of the company can use this printer.

☐ A Much

☐ B Some

☐ C Any

04. A: "Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ water in the barrel?"

B: "No, I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ left."

☐ A some, any

☐ B any, any

☐ C some, some

05. A: There were many people in your brother's birthday party.  
Do you know them all?

B: No. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ one of them.

**A** some**B** the**C** any

06. The expression on Sid's face told everyone that it was unwise to ask him \_\_\_\_\_ questions.

**A** some**B** any**C** much

07. He said, "I'll try my best to prevent \_\_\_\_\_ loss."

**A** any**B** much**C** some

08. Would you please give me \_\_\_\_\_ red ink?

**A** much**B** some**C** any

09. A: Are there \_\_\_\_\_ convenience stores near here?

B: No, there are \_\_\_\_\_ any convenience stores near here.

**A** some, not**B** any, no**C** any, not

答案及题目译文：

01. **A** 汤姆是个聪明的男孩，他可以毫无困难地回答老师的问题，但是琳达回答问题却有一些困难。

02. **C** 她太年轻不能做任何工作。

03. **C** 公司里的任何员工都可以使用这台打印机。

04. **B** A：你桶里还有水吗？

B：没有了，我一点水都不剩了。

05. **C** A：你哥哥生日派对上有好多人，你全部都认识吗？

B：不，我一个人都不认识。

06. **B** 席德的表情告诉大家，问他任何问题都是不明智的。

07. **A** 他说："我会尽全力去避免任何损失。"

08. **B** 你可以给我一些红墨水吗？

09. **C** A：附近有便利店吗？

B：没有，这附近一家便利店都没有。

Trap 1 单字陷阱. 同义单字辨析篇

## 03 asleep vs. sleepy

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Linda, why do you look so asleep?

琳达, 为什么你看起来那么困?

B: Because I didn't fall sleepy until 23:30 last night.

因为我昨晚到 23:30 才睡着。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

asleep 与 sleepy 均为 (sleep) 的形容词, 两者在用法上有所区别, 请见以下说明:

- (1) asleep 一般用作表语, 意为 "睡着的", 强调状态, 指处于睡着的状态, 侧重动作的结果。不能单独放在名词前作前位定语, 但有时却可放在名词后作后置定语。需要注意的是, "睡得很熟; 睡得很香" 常用 "fast / sound asleep" 表示, 而不说 "very asleep"。

"be asleep" 是指 "睡着" 的状态, 意为 "睡着的"; 如果表示 "入睡", 要用 "fall asleep", 意为 "刚刚入睡", 指 "刚睡着" 这个动作。

- (2) sleepy 常指人昏昏欲睡, 或沉睡时的寂静状态, 既可作表语, 意为 "困倦的; 想睡觉的"; 也可作前置定语, 意为 "欲睡的; 好睡的"。短语 feel sleepy 表示 "昏昏欲睡的、想睡觉的"。

范例中, A 所说的 "Why do you look so asleep?" 想要表达的意思是 "你为什么看起来这么困?" 此处的 "困" 指的是 "困倦的", 如上所述, asleep 应改为 sleepy; B 想要表达的意思是 "23:30 才睡着", 此处的 "睡着" 是指 "刚刚入睡", 如上所述, fall sleepy 应改为 fall asleep。因此整个例句正确的说法应为:

A: Linda, why do you look so sleepy?

B: Because I didn't fall asleep until 23:30 last night.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 我爷爷睡着了。

☐ My grandpa has fallen sleepy.

☒ My grandpa has fallen asleep.

02. 我很累，想睡觉了。

☐ I'm very tired and I feel asleep.

☒ I'm very tired and I feel sleepy.

03. 莉莉还在睡觉吗？

☐ Is Lily still sleepy?

☒ Is Lily still asleep?

04. 那位正在睡觉的女孩是佩妮的好朋友。

☐ The girl sleepy is Penny's good friend.

☒ The girl asleep is Penny's good friend.

05. 电话响起时，杰瑞刚睡着。

☐ Jerry was asleep when the phone rang.

☒ Jerry fell asleep when the phone rang.

06. 婴儿在摇篮里睡得很香。

☐ The baby was sound sleepy in the cradle.

☒ The baby was sound asleep in the cradle.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. Jim has begun to feel \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ A slept

☐ B sleepy

☒ C asleep

02. He was so tired that he \_\_\_\_\_ on the sofa.

☐ A fell asleep

☐ B fall asleep

☒ C fell sleepy



03. You will be \_\_\_\_\_ asleep by the time we get home.  
 A sounded B very C fast
04. The cool weather made him \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A asleep B sleep C sleepy
05. The \_\_\_\_\_ dog's name is Tito.  
 A sleep B asleep C sleepy
06. Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ for two hours.  
 A have been asleep B has been asleep C has fallen asleep
07. Tina, are you \_\_\_\_\_? You can have a rest.  
 A asleep B sleep C sleepy
08. I had a sleepless night yesterday, so I \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
 A feeling sleepy B feel sleepy C feel asleep
09. When Nicole came home last night, her roommates were all \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A sleepy B sleep C asleep
10. Danny was \_\_\_\_\_; I couldn't wake him up.  
 A fast asleep B very asleep C fast sleep

答案及题目译文：

01. B 吉姆开始觉得想睡觉了。

02. A 他累倒在沙发上睡着了。

03. C 我们到家时你会睡得很熟。

04. C 凉爽的天气让他昏昏欲睡。

05. C 那只懒洋洋的狗名字叫提托。

06. B 露西已经睡了两个小时了。

07. C 蒂娜，你想睡觉吗？你可以休息一下啊！

08. B 我昨天晚上失眠了，所以我今天觉得很困。

09. C 妮可昨天到家的时候，她的室友已经全部睡着了。

10. A 丹尼睡得很熟。我没办法叫醒他。

## 04 bring vs. take vs. carry

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: Jenny, come and stay with us during the winter holidays.  
珍妮，寒假期间到我们这里来住吧。
- B: Wonderful! Can I take a friend of mine?  
太好了！我可以带一个朋友过去吗？

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

bring、take、carry 都是含有“带、拿”意思的动词，但三者用法有所区别。请见以下说明：

- (1) bring 意为“带来；拿来”，表示将人或物“带到／拿到自己（说话者）所在的位置”，常与 here, me 搭配。
- (2) take 意为“带走；拿走”，常与 away 搭配，表示将人或物“拿开／带离自己（说话者）所在的位置”。
- (3) carry 意为“拿、提、扛、搬、携带”，较常指“用手或身体搬运”的意思，不强调动作的方向。

范例中，“带一个朋友过来”指的是“说话者自己带人到对方所在的位置”，如上所述可知，句中的 take 应改为 bring，因此正确的说法应为：

Can I bring a friend of mine?  
(我可以带一个朋友过去吗?)

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 露西，出门的时候记得带着你的伞。

- ☐ Lucy, remember to bring your umbrella when you go out.  
☒ Lucy, remember to carry an umbrella with you when you go out.

02. 拉娜，请把那本字典拿过来。

- ☐ Lana, take the dictionary over here.  
☒ Lana, bring the dictionary over here.

03. 她需要有人帮她提行李。

- ☐ She needs somebody to help her bring the luggage.  
☒ She needs somebody to help her carry the luggage.

04. 下次来拜访时，我会帮你带一些好吃的巧克力过来。

- ☐ When I call on you next time, I'll take some delicious chocolates to you.  
☒ Next time I call on you, I'll bring you some delicious chocolates.

05. 你发高烧了，让我带你去医院。

- ☐ You're having a high fever, let me bring you to hospital.  
☒ You're having a high fever, let me take you to the hospital.

06. 这束花真难闻，请拿开它。

- ☐ The bouquet smells awful, please bring it away.  
☒ The bouquet smells awful, please take it away.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. Please \_\_\_\_\_ my book to me tomorrow.

- ☐ A carry ☐ B take ☐ C bring

02. The mother \_\_\_\_\_ her baby in her arms.

- ☐ A took ☐ B carried ☐ C brought

03. I forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ my purse with me when I left home.  
☐ A carry                      ☐ B bring                      ☐ C take
04. \_\_\_\_\_ that cup of coffee away, please.  
☐ A Bring                      ☐ B Take                      ☐ C Carry
05. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the box to another room. I need more space to work.  
☐ A take                      ☐ B carry                      ☐ C bring
06. Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ me your resume tomorrow.  
☐ A carry                      ☐ B take                      ☐ C bring
07. Kate \_\_\_\_\_ us to the boss's office.  
☐ A took                      ☐ B carried                      ☐ C brought
08. A licensed taxi is allowed to \_\_\_\_\_ 5 passengers.  
☐ A carry                      ☐ B bring                      ☐ C take
09. Excuse me. Could you help me \_\_\_\_\_ the box? It's so heavy.  
☐ A bring                      ☐ B carry                      ☐ C take
10. Judy, please \_\_\_\_\_ this bag away and \_\_\_\_\_ me mine.  
☐ A take; take                      ☐ B bring; bring                      ☐ C take; bring

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. ☐ C 明天请把书带来给我。
- 
02. ☐ B 那位母亲将她的小孩抱在怀里。
- 
03. ☐ C 我出门的时候忘记带钱包了。
- 
04. ☐ B 请把那杯咖啡端走，谢谢。
- 
05. ☐ A 请把那个箱子拿到别的房间。我需要多一点地方工作。
- 
06. ☐ C 明天别忘了把你的简历带来。
- 
07. ☐ A 凯特带我们去老板的办公室。
- 
08. ☐ A 领有执照的出租车可以搭载五位乘客。
- 
09. ☐ B 不好意思。你可以帮忙我拿这个箱子吗？它好重啊。
- 
10. ☐ C 朱迪，请把这个包拿走，把我的包拿过来。
-



## 05 hope vs. wish

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Will it rain tomorrow?

明天会下雨吗?

B: I wish not. I'll visit my grandma tomorrow.

希望不会, 我明天要去看我外婆。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

hope 与 wish 都表示 (希望), 但两者在用法上有所区别, 不能随意替换。

- (1) hope 作动词, 表示可以实现或能达到的 (希望、愿望), 后面若接 that 引导宾语从句, 该从句的动词应该用一般未来式或一般现在式。
- (2) wish 作动词, 表示无法实现或难以实现的 (希望、愿望), wish 后面若接 that 引导宾语从句, 该从句中的动词要用虚拟语气 (过去时或过去完成时)。
- (3) 作动词时, 两者相同之处为: a) 都可以接不定式作宾语; b) 都能与介词 for 连用; c) 都可以与过去完成时连用, 表示本来想做而没有做成; d) 都可以用于句型 (It is/was to be...that) 中。
- (4) 需要注意的是, wish 之后可以跟含有动词不定式的复合宾语连用, 意为 (想要、希望), 相当于 (would like / want), 而 hope 没有此用法; wish 还可用于句型 (wish sb. sth.) 中, 即 wish 后面可接双宾语, 表示好的 (祝愿), 而 hope 没有此种用法; 此外, 在回答问句时, 如果表示希望某事 (不会) 发生时, 应用 (I hope (not) so.), 而不用 wish, 且 not 不可以放在 hope 之前。

范例中, B 表示不希望下雨, 如上所述, 回答问句时应用 hope, 而不用 wish, 因此正确的说法应为:

I hope not. I'll visit my grandma tomorrow.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 汤姆，祝你成功。

☒ Tom, I hope you success.

☐ Tom, I wish you success.

02. 我真希望你昨晚参加了那场派对。

☒ I really hope that you could have joined the party last night.

☐ I really wish that you could have joined the party last night.

03. A：火车会准时吗？

☒ A: Will the train be punctual?

☐ A: Will the train be punctual?

B：我希望会。

B: I wish so.

B: I hope so.

04. 我希望我是一只蝴蝶。

☒ I hope I were a butterfly.

☐ I wish I were a butterfly.

05. 我希望苏珊明天能够早点来。

☒ I hope Susan to come earlier tomorrow.

☐ I hope that Susan will come earlier tomorrow.

06. 我真希望我能早点认识他。

☒ I wish that I know him before.

☐ I wish that I knew him before.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. I \_\_\_\_\_ my friends could go with me.

☐ A wish

☐ B hope

☐ C hopes

02. I \_\_\_\_\_ you will like the gift.

☐ A wish

☐ B hope

☐ C want

03. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ the coat yesterday.  
 A have bought      B buy      C had bought
04. I \_\_\_\_\_ you a pleasant journey.  
 A hope      B wish      C wish to
05. A: Will the weather be fine tomorrow? B: \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A I hope so      B I hope it so      C I hope
06. Jan, I \_\_\_\_\_ you a happy New Year.  
 A wish      B hope      C wishes
07. I \_\_\_\_\_ you were here.  
 A hope      B wish      C wish to
08. Jim is the best. I hope that Jim \_\_\_\_\_ the game.  
 A will win      B to win      C had won
09. We \_\_\_\_\_ each other the best of luck in the exam.  
 A wishes      B hope      C wish
10. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ fly like a bird.  
 A could      B can      C could to

答案及题目译文：

01. A 真希望当时我的朋友能跟我去。

02. B 希望你喜欢这份礼物。

03. C 真希望昨天我买下那件外套。

04. B 祝你玩得愉快。

05. A A：明天天气会很好吗？ B：希望如此。

06. A 珍，我祝你新年快乐。

07. B 我真希望你在这里。

08. A 吉姆是最棒的。我希望他会赢得比赛。

09. C 我们祝福彼此都能通过考试。

10. A 我真希望能像小鸟一样地飞翔。

## 06 everyday vs. every day

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: How do you go to school everyday?

你每天怎么去学校?

B: By bike.

骑自行车。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

- (1) everyday 意为“日常的、每日的、普遍的”，是形容词，后面可以直接跟名词，如：“everyday English”译为“日常英语”，“everyday clothes”译为（便服）。
- (2) every day 是短语，意为“每天、天天”，常用为副词，放在句首或句尾，用来修饰整个句子。有时为了加强语气，常在 every 和 day 之间加上 single。

范例中，A 强调的是“每天”，作副词，用来修饰整个句子，因此正确的说法应为：

How do you go to school every day?

### 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 网络已成为我们日常生活非常重要的一部分。

☒ The Internet has become a very important part of our every day life.

☐ The Internet has become a very important part of our everyday life.



02. 艾玛每天搭公共汽车去学校。

☒ Emma goes to school by bus everyday.

☐ Emma goes to school by bus every day.

03. 我并不是每天都见到杰瑞。

☒ I don't see Jerry everyday.

☐ I don't see Jerry every day.

04. 这些日常英语对我们学习英语有很大的帮助。

☒ The every day English is very helpful for our English study.

☐ The everyday English is very helpful for our English study.

05. 我们每天都讲英语以促进英语学习。

☒ We speak English everyday to help us study English.

☐ We speak English every day to help us study English.

06. 这是一件很平常的小事。

☒ This is an every day matter.

☐ It is an everyday matter.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. Lily bought a \_\_\_\_\_ dress yesterday.

☐ A everyday

☐ B every day

☐ C every-day

02. Lisa wears \_\_\_\_\_ clothes to work.

☐ A every day

☐ B every days

☐ C everyday

03. I go to school on foot \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ A everyday

☐ B every day

☐ C every-day

04. Jenny comes to see me \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ A every single days

☐ B everyday

☐ C every single day

05. I need a small dictionary for \_\_\_\_\_.

- A** everyday use      **B** every day use      **C** every-day use
06. My Dad does morning exercises \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A** everyday      **B** every days      **C** every day
07. Traffic accidents are \_\_\_\_\_ occurrences.  
**A** everyday      **B** every days      **C** every-day
08. Music is a part of \_\_\_\_\_ life.  
**A** every day      **B** every days      **C** everyday
09. Lucy studies very hard, and she gets up early \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A** everyday      **B** every days      **C** every day
10. Chocolate is my favorite food, and I eat one piece \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A** everyday      **B** every day      **C** every-day

答案及题目译文：

01. **A** 莉莉昨天买了一件家居服。

02. **C** 莉莎穿便服去上班。

03. **B** 我每天走路上学。

04. **C** 珍妮每天都会来看我。

05. **A** 我需要一本日常用的字典。

06. **C** 我爸每天做晨练。

07. **A** 车祸天天都在发生。

08. **C** 音乐是日常生活的一部分。

09. **C** 露西很用功，而且每天都起得很早。

10. **B** 巧克力是我最喜欢的食物，我每天都吃一块。

## 07 fit vs. suit

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: This dress doesn't fit me. Do you have other styles?  
这件裙子不适合我穿, 还有其他的款式吗?
- B: Yes. There is another style. You can try it on.  
有, 这里有另外一个款式, 你可以试穿一下。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

fit 与 suit 作为动词, 都有表示“适合”之意, 但是两者在具体意思上有所区别, 请见以下说明:

fit 表示形状、尺寸、大小的适合、吻合; suit 表示颜色、款式、风格等与人的气质、身材或皮肤的相配、适合, 同时还可表示合乎需要、口味、条件、地位等。

范例中 A 说的 style 是指“款式、式样”, 因此如上所述, 句中应用 suit, 正确的说法应为:

This dress doesn't suit me. Do you have other styles?

(这件裙子不适合我。你有其他的款式吗?)

需要注意的是, 两者在表示“使……适合”时, fit 常与 for 连用; suit 常与 to 连用。

### 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 山姆认为这份工作不适合他。

☒ Sam thinks that this job doesn't fit him.

☐ Sam thinks that this job doesn't suit him.

02. 妈妈昨天给我买的新大衣很合身。

- ☒ The coat mom bought me yesterday suits me perfectly.  
☐ The coat mom bought me yesterday fits me perfectly.

03. 这道菜不合我胃口。

- ☒ The dish doesn't fit my taste.  
☐ The dish doesn't suit my taste.

04. 她的经验很适合这份工作，所以她在工作上表现得很出色。

- ☒ Her experience suits her for the job, so she can do the job very well.  
☐ Her experience fits her for the job, so she can do the job very well.

05. 红色很适合你。

- ☒ Red fits you very well.  
☐ Red suits you very well.

06. 你觉得莉莉适合做老师吗？

- ☒ Do you think Lily is fitted to teaching?  
☐ Do you think Lily is suited to teaching?

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. The key doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ the lock.

- ☐ A suit ☐ B fit ☐ C fitting

02. The trousers \_\_\_\_\_ me well, but the color doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ my shoes.

- ☐ A suits, fits ☐ B fit, suits ☐ C fit, suit

03. I think that haircut \_\_\_\_\_ Tina very well.

- ☐ A fits ☐ B suits ☐ C fit

04. That style of the dress doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ your stature.

- ☐ A suit ☐ B suit for ☐ C fit



05. This coat doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ me. Do you have a smaller size?  
 A suit                      B fit                      C fit to
06. My shirt \_\_\_\_\_ me before until I washed it yesterday.  
 A fitted                      B suited                      C fit for
07. These shoes \_\_\_\_\_ me very well.  
 A suit                      B fit                      C suits
08. Does the coat you bought yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
 A fit                      B suit to                      C suited
09. The blue scarf \_\_\_\_\_ her disposition very well.  
 A suits for                      B fits                      C suits
10. This song is well \_\_\_\_\_ to the occasion.  
 A fitted                      B fit                      C suited

答案及题目译文：

01. B 这把钥匙跟锁孔不合。

02. C 这件裤子很合身，但是颜色跟我的鞋子不搭。

03. B 我觉得这发型很适合蒂娜。

04. A 那件衣服的款式跟你的身份不太搭。

05. B 这件外套我不合身，你有较小的尺寸吗？

06. A 这件衬衫在我昨天洗它之前都还很合身的。

07. B 这些鞋子很合我的脚。

08. A 你昨天买的外套合身吗？

09. C 这条蓝色的围巾跟他的个性很配。

10. C 这首歌很适合这个场合。

## 08 hear vs. listen to

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: I can't listen to your voice clearly.  
我听不清楚你的声音。

B: Sorry. We seem to have a bad connection.  
不好意思，我们的通讯好像不太正常。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

hear 与 listen to 都有“听”的意思，但是两者有所区别，请见以下说明：

(1) hear 强调“耳朵能听到的”这件事，有“听见、听说、听取”等意思，指声音传进了耳朵，即使你不集中注意力也听见了，一般不用于进行式。

(2) listen 强调的是“留神倾听”的动作，一般会接 to + 宾语，表示集中注意力认真聆听。

范例中，“听不清楚你的声音”是表示听的结果，即“听不到声音”，应该用 hear，因此正确的说法应为：

I can't hear your voice clearly. (我听不清楚你的声音。)

### 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 她的听觉不太好。

☒ She can't listen very well.

☐ She can't hear very well.

02. 苏珊喜欢听流行音乐。

- ☒ Susan is fond of hearing pop music.  
☐ Susan is fond of listening to pop music.

03. 我仔细听, 但还是没有听见老师说的话。

- ☒ I heard the teacher carefully, but I didn't listen to her words.  
☐ I listened to the teacher carefully, but I didn't hear her words.

04. 我花了一个晚上听朋友借给我的唱片。

- ☒ I spent the whole night hearing the record borrowed from my friend.  
☐ I spent the whole night listening to the record borrowed from my friend.

05. 你能听到我的声音吗?

- ☒ Can you listen to me?  
☐ Can you hear me?

06. 他听到他的背后有脚步声。

- ☒ He listened footsteps behind him.  
☐ He heard footsteps behind him.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. Please \_\_\_\_\_ me. I have something need to let you know.

- ☐ A listen                      ☐ B hear                      ☐ C listen to

02. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ somebody coming?

- ☐ A hear                      ☐ B listen to                      ☐ C hear to

03. She \_\_\_\_\_ his story carefully.

- ☐ A listened                      ☐ B heard                      ☐ C listened to

04. Jim could \_\_\_\_\_ a dog barking last night.

- ☐ A listen to                      ☐ B hear                      ☐ C listen

05. Didn't you \_\_\_\_\_ what the boss said?

- A hear                      B listen                      C hear to  
 06. She \_\_\_\_\_ a strange noise suddenly.  
     A listened                      B heard                      C listened to  
 07. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the radio carefully.  
     A listen to                      B hear                      C listen  
 08. I'm very glad to \_\_\_\_\_ your voice.  
     A listen                      B hear                      C listen to  
 09. I didn't really \_\_\_\_\_ what they were saying carefully.  
     A listen                      B hear                      C listen to  
 10. I \_\_\_\_\_ the twins talking in the next room.  
     A listened                      B heard to                      C heard

答案及题目译文：

01. C 请听我说。我有事情必须让你知道。

02. A 你听到有人过来的声音吗？

03. C 她很仔细地倾听他的故事。

04. B 吉姆昨天晚上听到一只狗在叫。

05. A 你没听见老板说的话吗？

06. B 她突然听见一阵奇怪的吵闹声。

07. A 请仔细听收音机在播什么。

08. B 我很高兴听见你的声音。

09. C 我其实没有很认真地听他们说话。

10. C 我听到隔壁那对双胞胎在说话。



## 09 speak vs. say vs. talk vs. tell

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Did you speak anything about the travel plan to your mom?  
你跟你妈妈说什么有关旅游计划的事了吗?

B: No. I spoke nothing.  
不, 我什么都没说。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

Speak, say, talk, tell 都含有“说”的意思, 但这四个单词的含义和用法有所区别, 请见以下说明:

(1) speak 可解释为“交谈; 发言; 讲……语言; 提起”的意思, 强调的是(说)的动作, 而非说话内容。当作不及物动词时, 常见的搭配形式有: speak of sth. / sb. 意为“谈到某事/某人”, speak to sb. 意为“跟某人讲话”; 当作及物动词时, 常以某种语言作宾语。例如:

My mom can't speak English at all. (我妈妈完全不会说英语。)

(2) say 可解释为“说; 讲”的意思, 强调说话的内容, 一般用作及物动词, 多指用言语表达自己的思想, 宾语通常为名词、代名词或从句。例如:

My sister said that she doesn't want to go to work at night.  
(我姐姐说她不想晚上去工作。)

(3) talk 可解释为“说话; 谈话; 讨论”的意思, 主要是表达与什么人说话或谈论什么事情, 一般用作不及物动词, 和介词 to, with 连用时, 意为“与……交谈”, 和介词 about 或 of 连用时, 意为“谈论……内容”。例如:

I don't want to talk about my girlfriend.  
(我不想要谈论跟我女朋友有关的事情。)

- (4) tell 可解释为“讲；告诉”的意思，强调告诉的内容，后面常连接双宾语，也可和 to 连用，可用于命令句，表示“嘱咐或语气较轻的命令”，常用于 tell sb. (not) to do sth. 的结构中。例如：

Mom usually tells us a story before we go to bed.

(妈妈通常在我们睡觉前讲故事给我们听。)

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

### 01. 他说法文。

- ☒ He says French.
- ☐ He speaks French.

### 02. 我们必须谈一谈。

- ☒ We need to speak.
- ☐ We need to talk.

### 03. 请告诉我实情。

- ☒ Please talk me the truth.
- ☐ Please tell me the truth.

### 04. 请用英语说。

- ☒ Please speak it in English.
- ☐ Please say it in English.

### 05. 他们正在谈论他们的巴黎之旅。

- ☒ They are talking their trip to Paris.
- ☐ They are talking about their trip to Paris.

### 06. 我不了解吉姆所说的事情。

- ☒ I don't understand what Jim spoke.
- ☐ I don't understand what Jim said.

# 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. "Please help me carry the box," Tina \_\_\_\_\_ to me.  
☐ A told                      ☐ B talked                      ☐ C said
02. Mr. Smith \_\_\_\_\_ at our class meeting yesterday.  
☐ A told                      ☐ B talked                      ☐ C spoke
03. Mom \_\_\_\_\_ the interesting story to me.  
☐ A told                      ☐ B talked                      ☐ C said
04. The teacher is \_\_\_\_\_ with Lily in the office.  
☐ A saying                      ☐ B telling                      ☐ C talking
05. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me how to get to the museum?  
☐ A say                      ☐ B talk                      ☐ C tell
06. The old man \_\_\_\_\_ that he saw the little girl yesterday.  
☐ A says                      ☐ B talks                      ☐ C tells
07. Excuse me, Mr. Brown, I can't \_\_\_\_\_ Russian.  
 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me what has happened in English?  
☐ A talk / tell                      ☐ B speak / tell                      ☐ C say / talk
08. The old man went out and \_\_\_\_\_ nothing.  
☐ A said                      ☐ B talked                      ☐ C told
09. Her mom \_\_\_\_\_ her not to stay up late.  
☐ A said                      ☐ B talked                      ☐ C told
10. Lisa, may I \_\_\_\_\_ to you?  
☐ A say                      ☐ B talk                      ☐ C speak

## 答案及题目译文：

- 
01. **C** 蒂娜对我说：“请帮我拿这个箱子。”
- 
02. **C** 史密斯先生昨天在我们的班级会议上发表讲话。
- 
03. **A** 妈妈告诉我一个有趣的故事。
- 
04. **C** 老师正和莉莉在办公室内交谈。
- 
05. **C** 你可以告诉我如何前往博物馆吗？
- 
06. **A** 这位老先生说他昨天看到那位小女孩了。
- 
07. **B** 抱歉，布朗先生，我不懂俄语。可以请你用英语告诉我发生什么事情了吗？
- 
08. **A** 这位老先生一语不发地走出去了。
- 
09. **C** 她的妈妈告诉她不可以熬夜。
- 
10. **B** 莉莎，我可以跟你谈谈吗？
-



## 10 spend vs. cost

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: How much does this bike spend?  
这辆自行车多少钱?

B: It spent me 3,000 dollars.  
它花了我 3000 元。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

spend 和 cost 均可表示“花费”，但两者的用法及含义有相当明显的区别，请见以下说明：

(1-1) spend 的主语通常是人，宾语则可以是时间或钱。常用句型有以下两种：

第一种，sb. spend time / money on sth. 意思是“某人在某一事物上花了多少时间 / 钱”。例如：

Mr. Willson spent lots of time on his wife.  
(威尔森先生在他太太身上花了很多时间。)

第二种，sb. spend time / money (in) doing sth. 意思是“某人在做某事方面花多少时间 / 钱”。例如：

Mrs. Smith always spends a lot of money for eating.  
(史密斯太太总是在吃的方面花很多钱。)

(1-2) spend money for sth. 意思是“花钱买……”，其后不可接不定式。例如：

I enjoy spending money for books. (我乐于花钱买书。)

(2-1) cost 的主语通常是事或物，不能是人。cost 若不表示“花费”，而是表示客观上或被动“耗费”，也可用人作主语，宾语通常是钱。例如：

This DVD player cost me two thousand dollars.

(这台 DVD 播放机花了我 2000 美元。)

(2-2) cost 也可用来比喻付出代价 (劳力、麻烦、精力、生命等)。例如：

This car accident cost him twenty thousand dollars.

(处理这次的交通事故花了他两万美元。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：It cost me 3,000 dollars.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 我花了三小时来修复这个。

☒ I cost three hours fixing this.

☐ I spent three hours fixing this.

02. 买一台新电视要花一大笔钱。

☒ A new TV spends a lot of money.

☐ A new TV costs a lot of money.

03. 他为取得这项成果花了很多时间。

☒ He spent much time in the achievement.

☐ He spent much time on the achievement.

04. 二十元就花在这顶帽子上。

☒ Twenty dollars was cost on the hat.

☐ Twenty dollars was spent on the hat.

05. 那场事故差点要了他的命。

☒ The accident almost spent him his life.

☐ The accident almost cost him his life.

06. 汤姆花了很大的力气来帮我。

☒ Tom cost great efforts to help me.

☐ Tom spent great efforts to help me.

# 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. The coat \_\_\_\_\_ me lots of money.  
☐ A spent                      ☐ B cost                      ☐ C was spent
02. Mr. Green \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of time helping Jim with his English yesterday.  
☐ A spent                      ☐ B cost                      ☐ C was spent
03. They spent two years \_\_\_\_\_ this building.  
☐ A in building              ☐ B to build              ☐ C on building
04. Finishing the work \_\_\_\_\_ him a lot of time.  
☐ A spent                      ☐ B was cost              ☐ C cost
05. The mistake \_\_\_\_\_ the company one million dollars.  
☐ A spent                      ☐ B was cost              ☐ C cost
06. I didn't buy the camera because it \_\_\_\_\_ too much.  
☐ A spent                      ☐ B cost                      ☐ C was spent
07. Sam \_\_\_\_\_ much money on books.  
☐ A spends                      ☐ B costs                      ☐ C is spent

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 这件外套花了我很多钱。
02. ☐ A 格林先生昨天花了很多时间帮吉姆学英语。
03. ☐ A 他们花了两年盖这幢建筑物。
04. ☐ C 完成这项工作花了他很多时间。
05. ☐ C 这项错误让公司损失了一百万美元。
06. ☐ B 我没有买那个相机因为太贵了。
07. ☐ A 山姆花很多钱在书上面。

## 11 travel vs. trip

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: What did you do last weekend?

上个周末你们都做了什么?

B: We took a travel to the mountains.

我们去山上玩了。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

travel 与 trip 均可表示 (旅行), 但两者在用法上有所区别, 请见以下说明:

- (1-1) travel 作名词时为不可数名词, 是 (旅行; 旅游; 游历) 的意思, 泛指一般的旅行, 而非特指某次具体的旅行。通常用来表达路途较远或时间较长的旅游。例如:

My parents usually plan two weeks travel for me every summer.

(我父母通常每年夏天都为我安排两个星期的旅游。)

- (1-2) travel 还可以用作动词, 意为 (长途行走; 旅行; 游历)。travel in... 则表示 (在某地旅行)。例如:

The White family is travelling in UK. (怀特一家人在英国旅游。)

- (2) trip 当作名词时为可数名词, 是 (旅行; 旅程; 出游) 的意思, 通常指短时间、短距离内往返的旅行。take a trip to... 则是指 (去某地旅行)。business trip 是 (出差) 的意思。例如:

Mr. Roth took a business trip to Japan last month.

(罗思先生上个月去日本出差。)



## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 我搭公共汽车上班，全程要花一个小时。  
☐ I go to work by bus, and the travel takes one hour.  
☒ I go to work by bus, and the trip takes one hour.
- 
02. 你父母旅行回来了吗？  
☐ Are your parents back from their many travels yet?  
☒ Are your parents back from their travels yet?
- 
03. 莉莉的旅行顺利吗？  
☐ Did Lily have a good travel?  
☒ Did Lily have a good trip?
- 
04. 那个老人环游了全世界。  
☐ The old man tripped the whole world.  
☒ The old man traveled the whole world.
- 
05. 你对《马可·波罗游记》有兴趣吗？  
☐ Are you interested in *The Trips of Marco Polo*?  
☒ Are you interested in *The Travels of Marco Polo*?
- 
06. 我想去乡下走走。  
☐ I want to take a travel to the countryside.  
☒ I want to take a trip to the countryside.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. Jim has gone off on his \_\_\_\_\_ again.  
☐ A travels                      ☐ B a trip                      ☒ C a travel
02. I go to school by bike, and the \_\_\_\_\_ takes half an hour.  
☐ A travels                      ☐ B trip                      ☒ C a travel

03. Jake is \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris.  
☐ A tripping                      ☐ B traveled                      ☐ C traveling
04. Do you want to take a \_\_\_\_\_ to the suburb?  
☐ A trip                      ☐ B travel                      ☐ C trips
05. The manager has to make business \_\_\_\_\_ every now and then.  
☐ A trip                      ☐ B travels                      ☐ C trips
06. Lucy, do you like books of \_\_\_\_\_?  
☐ A a travel                      ☐ B trips                      ☐ C travels
07. Mr. Smith came home after years of foreign \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A travel                      ☐ B trips                      ☐ C trip
08. This is the best \_\_\_\_\_ of my life.  
☐ A travel                      ☐ B trip                      ☐ C travels
09. He works in a \_\_\_\_\_ agency.  
☐ A travel                      ☐ B trip                      ☐ C travels
10. Jim, let's prepare for the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A travel                      ☐ B trip                      ☐ C travels

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ A 吉姆已再次出发去旅行了。

02. ☐ B 我骑自行车去上学，全程要花半个小时。

03. ☐ C 杰克正在巴黎旅游。

04. ☐ A 你想要去郊外走走吗？

05. ☐ C 这位经理必须时常出差。

06. ☐ C 露西，你喜欢旅游书吗？

07. ☐ A 在多年的国外旅游后，史密斯先生回到家了。

08. ☐ B 这是我人生中最棒的一次旅游。

09. ☐ A 他在旅行社工作。

10. ☐ B 吉姆，我们来为旅行准备准备。

## 12 wait vs. expect

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Why is Jim standing at the school gate all the time?

吉姆为什么一直站在校门口?

B: Because he is expecting his mom.

因为他在等他的妈妈。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

wait 和 expect 都可以用来表示“等待”的意思，但是含义还是有明显的区别，见以下说明：

- (1) wait 是“等候”的意思，通常与介词 for 合用，指在一个地方待着，没有采取任何行动。主要是强调时间的流逝且含有耽误的意思，有时候甚至有暗示某人来得太晚或某事发生得太迟的含义。例如：

Simon has been waiting for his wife for two hours.

(西蒙已经等了他太太两个小时了。)

- (2) expect 有“期待；预料；指望；要求”的含意，通常当作及物动词，后面不加介词 for，主要是强调某事“可指好或不好的事”很可能会发生或到来，不强调时间的迟早，只表达一种心情。例如：

I expect to get an email from my friend that I made in summer camp last year.

(我期盼能收到去年在夏令营交到的朋友的来信。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：Because he is waiting for his mom.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 她在期待着她丈夫的信。

☒ She is waiting for a letter from her husband.

☐ She is expecting a letter from her husband.

02. 我在等公共汽车。

☒ I'm excepting the bus.

☐ I'm waiting for the bus.

03. 她期盼着男朋友向她求婚。

☒ She is waiting a proposal from her boyfriend.

☐ She is expecting a proposal from her boyfriend.

04. 我预计星期一回来。

☒ I wait to be back on Monday.

☐ I expect to be back on Monday.

05. 妈妈，别对我期望太高。

☒ Mom, don't wait for too much of me.

☐ Mom, don't expect too much of me.

06. 我已经等我的朋友半小时了。

☒ I've been expecting half an hour for my friend.

☐ I've been waiting half an hour for my friend.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出中正确的选项。

01. We are \_\_\_\_\_ the rain stop before we begin to work.

☐ A waiting for

☐ B expecting for

☐ C waiting

02. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ us to be punctual.

☐ A expected for

☐ B expected

☐ C waited



03. What are you \_\_\_\_\_ for?  
☐ A wait                      ☐ B expecting                      ☐ C waiting
04. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ you at 7:00.  
☐ A wait                      ☐ B expect                      ☐ C expect for
05. He was \_\_\_\_\_ his girlfriend in the park.  
☐ A waiting for                      ☐ B expecting for                      ☐ C waiting
06. He was \_\_\_\_\_ a telephone call from his girlfriend.  
☐ A waiting for                      ☐ B expecting for                      ☐ C waiting
07. Jake \_\_\_\_\_ to fail the exam.  
☐ A waited                      ☐ B expect                      ☐ C expected
08. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ too long before acting.  
☐ A wait                      ☐ B expect                      ☐ C wait for
09. I \_\_\_\_\_ to go with you.  
☐ A wait                      ☐ B expect                      ☐ C wait for
10. We don't \_\_\_\_\_ that Jim has done such a thing.  
☐ A expect                      ☐ B wait                      ☐ C wait for

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ A 我们期盼着这场雨能在我们开工之前停下来。

02. ☐ B 老师要求我们要准时。

03. ☐ C 你在等什么？

04. ☐ B 我期盼你七点能到。

05. ☐ A 他在公园里等他的女朋友。

06. ☐ C 他在等一通来自他女朋友的电话。

07. ☐ C 杰克预计这次考试会不及格。

08. ☐ A 行动之前不要等太久。

09. ☐ B 我期望能跟你一起去。

10. ☐ A 我们没有料到吉姆做了这样的事。

## 13 worth vs. worthy

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: What do think about this book?

你觉得这本书怎么样?

B: It will be very helpful for your study, so it is worth of buying.

它对你的学习很有帮助, 所以它值得你买。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

worth 与 worthy 都可当作形容词, 都有“值得”的意思, 但两者在用法上有所区别, 请见以下说明:

- (1-1) 句子的主语是物质名词时, worth 后面通常要加宾语, 该宾语通常是名词或者动名词, 例如:

The painting is worth ten thousand dollars. (这幅画作价值一万美元。)

- (1-2) 当句子的主语是 it 而非物质名词时, 若 it 代表的不是具体东西时, 句中的 worth 后面通常应加上 while, 后面接动名词或不定式, 此时 it 是形式主语, 真正的主语是动名词或不定式。例如:

It is worthwhile to see the movie. (这是部值得看的电影。)

- (2-1) worthy 可与介词 of 连用, 组成短语 be worthy of, 后面可接名词或动名词的被动形式, 例如:

This is worthy of being done. (这是件值得做的事。)

- (2-2) worthy 也可与不定式连用, 此时 worthy 后面不可再用介词 of, 要直接用不定式, 且不定式要用被动语态, 例如:

This book is worthy to be read. (这本书值得一读。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：It will be very helpful for your study, so it is worthy of buying.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 这个课题值得研究。

- ☒ This issue is worthy of studying.
- ☐ This issue is worthy of being studied.

02. 这幅画大约值十万美元。

- ☒ This painting is worthy about \$100,000.
- ☐ This painting is worth about \$100,000.

03. 这则新闻值得大家关注。

- ☒ The news is worth of attention.
- ☐ The news is worthy of attention.

04. 购物之前先规画一下对我们有益。

- ☒ It's worth our while making a plan before you go shopping.
- ☐ It's worth our while to make a plan before you go shopping.

05. 这是一本值得再看一遍的书。

- ☒ This book is worthy of to be read again.
- ☐ This book is worthy to be read again.

06. 这座博物馆有很多很棒的收藏品，值得参观。

- ☒ The museum is really good. It is worth to visit.
- ☐ There are lots of fine collections in this museum. It is worth visiting.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. The records of Lady Gaga are \_\_\_\_\_, for her songs can make us happy.  
☐ A worth being bought   ☐ B worthy of being bought   ☐ C worth of buying
02. It will be worth your while \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting.  
☐ A to attend   ☐ B attend   ☐ C attending
03. The suggestion is well \_\_\_\_\_ considering.  
☐ A worth of   ☐ B worthy   ☐ C worth
04. The traffic accident is worthy \_\_\_\_\_ more attention.  
☐ A paying   ☐ B of to be paid   ☐ C to be paid
05. Some findings of this report are \_\_\_\_\_ note.  
☐ A worth of   ☐ B worth   ☐ C worthy
06. It is worthwhile \_\_\_\_\_ out that Mike's advice is well \_\_\_\_\_ consideration.  
☐ A pointing; worthy of   ☐ B to be pointed; worth   ☐ C pointing; worth of
07. This film is excellent. It is worth \_\_\_\_\_ again.  
☐ A to watch   ☐ B watch   ☐ C watching
08. These cleaners are \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A worthy of respecting   ☐ B worthy of being respected  
☐ C worth being respected

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B Lady Gaga 的唱片很值得买，因为听她的歌让我们很开心。

02. ☐ A 参与这次会议将对你有益。

03. ☐ C 这个提议很值得好好思考一下。

04. ☐ C 交通事故值得我们多花些心思关注。

05. ☐ B 这份报告里的研究结果很值得注记。

06. ☐ A 麦克这个建议很值得提出来好好考虑。

07. ☐ C 这部电影很棒，值得再看一次。

08. ☐ B 这些洗衣店很值得受人尊敬。



## 14 occur vs. happen vs. take place

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Jerry, can you show me the way to the Caf é ?

杰瑞, 你可以告诉我怎么去那家咖啡厅吗?

B: Sorry, I don't know. You can ask Tom, he occurred to know the place.

不好意思, 我不知道怎么去。你可以问问汤姆, 他碰巧知道那个地方。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

occur, happen 和 take place 三者都表示“发生”, 都是不及物动词, 都不可以用于被动语态, 但具体含义及用法都有明显区别, 请见以下说明:

(1) occur 是“出现; 存在于; 出现于”的意思, 指单纯的发生。句型 occur to sb./sth. 则有“某人突然想起……”。例如:

It occurred to him that he should go visit his grandparents more often.

(他突然想起他应该更常去探望他的祖父母。)

(2) happen 是“发生; 碰巧”的意思, 常指具体事件的发生, 特别指那些偶然的或非预知的事件“发生”。主语如果是“事”时, 则有“偶然发生”的含义。例如:

I happened to see one of my high school classmates two days ago.

(两天前我碰巧遇见一位高中同学。)

(3) take place 是“发生; 举行; 举办”的意思, 一般指非偶然性事件, 即根据计划或安排而必然会发生的事情。例如:

When will the concert take place? (演唱会何时举办?)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：You can ask Tom, he happened to know the place.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 你的生日派对什么时候举行？

- ☒ When will your birthday party happen?
- ☐ When will your birthday party take place?

02. 那起交通事故发生在上个星期一。

- ☒ The traffic accident was occurred on last Monday.
- ☐ The traffic accident occurred on last Monday.

03. 他发生什么意外了吗？

- ☒ Has anything occurred to him?
- ☐ Has anything happened to him?

04. 会议将在下周六召开。

- ☒ The meeting will be taken place next Saturday.
- ☐ The meeting will take place next Saturday.

05. 我突然想起来我把雨伞落在办公室了。

- ☒ It happened to me that I left my umbrella in the office.
- ☐ It occurred to me that I left my umbrella in the office.

06. 我碰巧在回家的路上遇见了莉莉。

- ☒ I took place to meet Lily on my way home.
- ☐ I happened to meet Lily on my way home.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. It \_\_\_\_\_ that I didn't know his name.

- ☐ A occurred
- ☐ B happened
- ☐ C took place

02. The basketball match will \_\_\_\_\_ next Monday.  
☐ A take place                      ☐ B happen                      ☐ C occur
03. It \_\_\_\_\_ to me that she didn't know how to go there.  
☐ A occurred                      ☐ B happened                      ☐ C took place
04. When did the accident \_\_\_\_\_?  
☐ A been occurred                      ☐ B happenedt                      ☐ C occur
05. Jake \_\_\_\_\_ to know the details of it.  
☐ A occurred                      ☐ B happened                      ☐ C took place
06. The Olympic Games of 2012 will \_\_\_\_\_ in London.  
☐ A take place                      ☐ B happen                      ☐ C occur
07. I'm sorry to tell you that something \_\_\_\_\_ to your grandma.  
☐ A occurred                      ☐ B happened                      ☐ C took place
08. It \_\_\_\_\_ that she went home just now.  
☐ A happened                      ☐ B occurred                      ☐ C took place
09. The old man remembers everything exactly as if \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
☐ A was happening                      ☐ B happens                      ☐ C happened

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 碰巧我不知道他的名字。

02. ☐ A 这场篮球赛会在下周一举行。

03. ☐ A 我突然想起她不知道如何到那儿。

04. ☐ C 意外何时发生的？

05. ☐ B 杰克碰巧知道这件事的细节。

06. ☐ A 2012 年的奥林匹克运动会将在伦敦举行。

07. ☐ B 很抱歉，我得告诉你你祖母出事了。

08. ☐ A 她刚好现在到家。

09. ☐ C 这位老人记得所有的事情，就好像这些事昨天才发生过一样。

## 15 can vs. may vs. might

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Someone is knocking at the door. May it be your mom?

有人在敲门。会不会是你妈妈?

B: No, my mom is sleeping now.

不会, 我妈妈在睡觉。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

can, may, might 都有“可以; 能”的含义, 通常用来表达请求或允许, 多用于口语中, 但三者在使用上还是有所区别, 请见以下说明:

(1) can 有“能力; 允许; 可能性”的意思, 代表对这句话陈述的内容有 100% 的信心; 用于否定句或疑问句时, 则有“怀疑、猜测、惊异”的含义。例如:

I can talk to a foreigner in English freely. (我可以自由地和外国人用英语交谈。)

Can you come and help me with my math? (你可以过来帮我加强数学吗?)

(2) may 表示询问或说明一件事可不可以做; 用 may 引导一个句子则表示以客气或委婉语气做请求, 回答这类句子时, 通常会以较热情的答句来回应, 代表对这句话的陈述内容有大约 50% 的信心。例如:

May I use the bathroom? (我可以用一下洗手间吗?)

Sure. Go ahead. (当然。去吧。)

(3) might 是 may 的过去时, 用来表示过去可以做的事或可能发生的事, 可能性较小, 代表对这句话的内容的信心指数只有 30% 以下; 用在疑问句中, 则表示一种委婉、客气的态度。例如:

My manager thought we might finish the project earlier.



(我们经理以为我们可以早一点完成这个专案。)  
所以范例中的正确说法应为：Can it be your mom?

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 你会说法语吗?

- ☐ May you speak French?
- ☒ Can you speak French?

02. 他以为他可以完成这项任务。

- ☐ He thought he may finish the task.
- ☒ He thought he might finish the task.

03. 电话响了。会是汤姆打来的吗?

- ☐ The telephone rings. Might it be Tom?
- ☒ The telephone rings. Can it be Tom?

04. 那可能是真的，也可能不是。

- ☐ It can or can not be true.
- ☒ It may or may not be true.

05. 我可以借这本书吗?

- ☐ Might I borrow this book?
- ☒ May I borrow this book?

06. 那个女孩不可能是琳达，琳达已经去法国了。

- ☐ That girl might not be Linda. Linda has gone to France.
- ☒ That girl can not be Linda. Linda has gone to France.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. I \_\_\_\_\_ not move the desk.

- ☒ A might
- ☐ B can
- ☐ C may

02. I'm not sure. But she \_\_\_\_\_ be right.  
☐ A might                      ☐ B can                      ☐ C may
03. It \_\_\_\_\_ not be a rabbit. It's a dog.  
☐ A might                      ☐ B can                      ☐ C may
04. They hoped they \_\_\_\_\_ be there on time.  
☐ A might                      ☐ B can                      ☐ C may
05. Wood \_\_\_\_\_ be made paper.  
☐ A might                      ☐ B may                      ☐ C can
06. Jimmy \_\_\_\_\_ speak both Russian and French.  
☐ A might                      ☐ B can                      ☐ C may
07. There is a purse. \_\_\_\_\_ it be yours?  
☐ A Can                      ☐ B May                      ☐ C Might
08. \_\_\_\_\_ you swim?  
☐ A Can                      ☐ B May                      ☐ C Might
09. \_\_\_\_\_ I help you, sir?  
☐ A Might                      ☐ B would                      ☐ C May

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 我无法移动那张桌子。
02. ☐ C 我不太确定。但她也许是对的。
03. ☐ B 它不可能是一只兔子。它是一只狗。
04. ☐ A 他们本来希望可以准时抵达的。
05. ☐ C 木头可以被做成纸。
06. ☐ B 吉米会说俄语和法语。
07. ☐ A 这儿有一个皮包。会是你的吗？
08. ☐ A 你会游泳吗？
09. ☐ C 需要我帮忙吗，先生？

## 16 maybe vs. may be

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Mom, I can't find my purse.  
妈妈, 我找不到我的钱包。

B: **May be** you put it on the desk.  
你可能把它放在桌上了。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

maybe 与 may be 均有“可能；也许”的意思，但两者的用法及含义有所区别。请见以下说明：

(1) maybe 是副词，意思是“也许；可能”，与 perhaps 用法类似，常位于句首。例如：

Maybe I'll go to America to get my Master degree next year.

(也许明年我会去美国攻读硕士学位。)

(2) may be 为情态动词 may + 动词原形 be，意思是“也许是；可能是”。例如：

He may be a nice guy. (他也许是个好人。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：Maybe you put it on the desk.

### 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 他可能是个骗子。

✗ He maybe a swindler.

☑ He may be a swindler.

02. 他也许会约你出去。

☒ May be he'll ask you out.

☐ Maybe he'll ask you out.

03. 苏珊可能今晚来。

☒ May be Susan will come tonight.

☐ Maybe Susan will come tonight.

04. 他可能是一位老师。

☒ He maybe a teacher.

☐ He may be a teacher.

05. 也许你忘了拿钥匙了。

☒ May be you forgot to take the key.

☐ Maybe you forgot to take the key.

06. 那可能是一只小狗。

☒ It maybe a dog.

☐ It may be a dog.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. \_\_\_\_\_ he can tell you the truth.

☐ A May

☐ B Maybe

☐ C May be

02. The man \_\_\_\_\_ a soldier.

☐ A may

☐ B maybe

☐ C may be

03. \_\_\_\_\_ the little girl is five years old.

☐ A May

☐ B Maybe

☐ C May be

04. She \_\_\_\_\_ right.

☐ A may be

☐ B maybe

☐ C may

05. \_\_\_\_\_ she will go to school this afternoon.

☐ A May

☐ B May be

☐ C Maybe



06. She \_\_\_\_\_ at home.  
☐ A may be                      ☐ B maybe                      ☐ C may
07. \_\_\_\_\_ the lady over there is her mother.  
☐ A May                      ☐ B Maybe                      ☐ C May be
08. You can ask the teacher for answer. He \_\_\_\_\_ in his office.  
☐ A may be                      ☐ B maybe                      ☐ C may
09. \_\_\_\_\_ you will have another chance next time.  
☐ A May                      ☐ B May be                      ☐ C Maybe
10. Your telephone \_\_\_\_\_ in that box.  
☐ A may be                      ☐ B maybe                      ☐ C may

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 他也许可以告诉你事实真相。
02. ☐ C 那男人也许是一位军人。
03. ☐ B 这小女孩大约五岁。
04. ☐ A 她也许是对的。
05. ☐ C 今天下午她可能会去学校。
06. ☐ A 她也许在家。
07. ☐ B 也许在那儿的那位女士是她的妈妈。
08. ☐ A 你可以去跟老师请教答案。他可能在他的办公室里。
09. ☐ C 也许你下次会再有一次机会。
10. ☐ A 你的电话可能在那个盒子里。

## 17 during vs. while vs. when

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Why are you so depressed?

为什么你如此沮丧?

B: While I got to the station, the train had left.

当我到达车站的时候, 火车已经开走了。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

during, when, while 均可表示“在……的时候”, 但三者在使用上有所区别。请见以下说明:

(1) during 意为“在……期间; 在……的某个时候”, 用在已知的时期、节日或表示时间观念的名词之前, 其后通常接 the, this, that, these, those, my, your, his 等词, 既可指某个动作在某个时期里连续不断地进行, 也可以指某个动作在这段时期里的某个时间发生。例如:

I didn't pay attention during the class. (上课的时候我不专心。)

(2) when 意为“在……时候; 当……时; 在……期间”, 用英语可以解释为 at or during the time that, 既可指时间点, 也可指一段时间, 引导的时间从句中的动词可以是终止性动词, 也可以是延续性动词, 从句的动作和主句的动作可以是同时发生, 也可以是先后发生, 主句用过去进行时, 从句则用一般过去时。例如:

I was watching television when my father came home.

(我爸爸回家时我正在看电视。)

- (3) while 意为“当……的时候；与……同时”，用英语可以解释为 during the time that，只指一段时间，引导的从句中的动词必须是延续性动词，强调主句的动作在从句动作的过程中发生或主句和从句两个动作同时发生。例如：

I'm sleeping while she was studying. (我在睡觉时，她正在用功读书。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：When I got to the station, the train had left.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 汤姆长得很结实，而他的弟弟却很瘦弱。

- ☒ Tom is strong when his brother is weak.
- ☐ Tom is strong while his brother is weak.

02. 演出期间，请不要站起来。

- ☒ Please don't stand up when the performance.
- ☐ Please don't stand up during the performance.

03. 老师进来的时候，我们正在讨论问题。

- ☒ While the teacher came in, we were discussing the questions.
- ☐ When the teacher came in, we were discussing the questions.

04. 他在上课中打瞌睡。

- ☒ He dozed off while the class.
- ☐ He dozed off during the class.

05. 我正在写作业，灯突然熄灭了。

- ☒ I was doing my homework, while suddenly the light went out.
- ☐ I was doing my homework, when suddenly the light went out.

06. 我们要去踢球的时候下雨了。

- ☒ We were going to playing football while it rained.
- ☐ We were going to playing football when it rained.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. I'll stay at home \_\_\_\_\_ the last four days.  
☐ A during                      ☐ B when                      ☐ C while
02. \_\_\_\_\_ I came in, my brother was sitting in the sofa.  
☐ A During                      ☐ B When                      ☐ C While
03. I was dancing \_\_\_\_\_ she was singing.  
☐ A during                      ☐ B when                      ☐ C while
04. I only saw him once \_\_\_\_\_ my stay in Paris.  
☐ A during                      ☐ B when                      ☐ C while
05. Please call me \_\_\_\_\_ you finished your work.  
☐ A during                      ☐ B when                      ☐ C while
06. Anna is tall \_\_\_\_\_ her sister is short.  
☐ A during                      ☐ B when                      ☐ C while
07. I was doing the housework \_\_\_\_\_ the phone rang.  
☐ A during                      ☐ B when                      ☐ C while
08. He is very good at English \_\_\_\_\_ his brother is absolutely hopeless.  
☐ A during                      ☐ B when                      ☐ C while

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ A 最后这四天我会待在家里。

02. ☐ B 我进来的时候，我弟弟正坐在沙发上。

03. ☐ C 她在唱歌时我正在跳舞。

04. ☐ A 我待在巴黎时只见过他一次。

05. ☐ B 当你完成工作时，请打电话给我。

06. ☐ C 安娜很高，可她姐姐很矮。

07. ☐ B 电话响的时候，我正在做功课。

08. ☐ C 他对英语很擅长，但是他的弟弟却无药可救。



Trap 1 单字陷阱. 同义单字辨析篇

## 18 prefer vs. rather

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: Which sport do you like, playing basketball or football?  
你喜欢哪项运动, 打篮球还是踢足球?
- B: I prefer playing basketball than to play football.  
我喜欢打篮球胜过踢足球。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

prefer 与 rather 都有“宁愿；更……”的意思，但两者用法有明显区别。请见以下说明：

(1) prefer 后面可以接名词、动名词或不定式，句型的呈现方式有以下几种：

a) prefer to do sth. 意为“宁愿……”。b) prefer A to B 意为“喜欢 A 胜过 B；在 A 与 B 之间更喜欢 A”。c) prefer + 不定式 + rather than + 不定式，意为（宁愿……也不……），本句型中，第一个不定式前面要加 to，第二个不定式前面以不加 to 居多。例如：

a) I prefer to go to a movie. (我宁愿去看电影。)

b) She prefers the long coat to the jacket. (比起夹克她更喜欢长外套。)

c.) He prefers to listen to music rather than read books.  
(他宁可听音乐也不愿看书。)

(2) rather 通常与 would 以及 than 连用，构成 would rather...than 的结构，意为“宁愿……而不愿……”，表示主观愿望，即在两者之中选择其一。would rather 单独使用时，意为“宁愿；宁可；更；最好”，后接动词原形，其否定形式是 would rather not do sth.；rather 只与 than 连用时，表示客观事实，意为“是……而不

是……；与其……不如……”，它连接的并列成分可以是名词、代名词、形容词、介词（短语）、动名词、分词、不定式、动词等。例如：

She would rather lie than admit.（她宁愿说谎也不愿承认。）

所以范例中的正确说法应为：I would rather play basketball than play football.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 我宁愿待在家里也不要出去。

- ☒ I prefer staying at home to go out.
- ☐ I prefer staying at home to going out.

02. 她宁愿死也不愿投降。

- ☒ She would rather die to surrender.
- ☐ She would rather die than surrender.

03. 当我还是个小女孩时，我喜欢黑色胜过白色。

- ☒ I had would rather black than white when I was a little girl.
- ☐ I preferred black to white than white when I was a little girl.

04. 比起跳舞，露西更喜欢唱歌。

- ☒ Lucy enjoys singing rather than dance.
- ☐ Lucy enjoys singing rather than dancing.

05. 他喜欢打篮球胜过游泳。

- ☒ He prefers to playing soccer rather than swim.
- ☐ He prefers to play soccer rather than swim.

06. 那个小男孩不愿意去上学。

- ☒ That little boy would rather not to go to school.
- ☐ That little boy would rather not go to school.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. A: Do you like swimming?  
B: Yes, but I prefer \_\_\_\_\_.  
A skate B to skating C skating
02. She'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ in the countryside.  
A to working B work C working
03. Joe prefers swimming to \_\_\_\_\_ football.  
A playing B play C have would rather
04. I \_\_\_\_\_ walk there than take a bus.  
A had would rather B would rather C played
05. He is a teacher \_\_\_\_\_ an actor.  
A rather than B would rather C prefer
06. Kate preferred to stay at home rather than \_\_\_\_\_ to see a film.  
A going B to go C gone
07. The students preferred writing a term paper \_\_\_\_\_ taking an exam.  
A of B to C in
08. I would rather have noodles than \_\_\_\_\_ hamburgers.  
A to have B having C /

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. C A：你喜欢游泳吗？ B：是的，但我更喜欢滑旱冰。
- 
02. B 她宁可在乡下工作。
- 
03. A 比起足球乔更喜欢游泳。
- 
04. B 比起搭公共汽车我宁可走路去那里。
- 
05. A 与其说他是演员不如说他是一位老师。
- 
06. B 凯特宁愿待在家里也不愿出去看电影。
- 
07. B 学生们宁可写一篇学期报告也不愿考试。
- 
08. C 比起汉堡我更喜欢吃面。
-

## 01 think 的用法

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: What can I do for you?

有什么需要我帮忙的吗?

B: Yes. I want to know what animal this is. I can't think about its name.

是的, 我想知道这种动物的名字。我突然想不起它的名字。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

think 作为动词, 其过去时和过去分词均为 thought, 有“思考、想、认为、想起、打算”之意。例如:

I think Germany will be the winner. (我认为德国将会获得冠军。)

think 后面可接介词构成不同意思的介词短语, 这里主要介绍 think of, think about, think over 这三个容易混淆的介词短语。

(1) think of 与 think about 最容易混淆, 在表示“考虑”或“对……有某种看法”时, 两者可以通用。例如:

What do you think of (about) that hat? (你认为那顶帽子怎么样?)

需要注意的是, 在这种情况下如果出现“think highly of … (认为……很好)”、“think badly / ill of … (认为……不好)”等短语时, of 不可改为 about。另外, 在下列情况中两者也不可以通用:

a. 当表示“想要、打算、想出、想到、关心、想起、记得”时, 一般用 think of, 而不用 think about。如:

He's thinking of cheating. (他打算要作弊。)



范例中 “I can't think of its name.” 是指 “想不起动物的名字”，此时 “想起” 应用 think of。→ I can't think of its name.

b. 当表示 “回想过去的事情、考虑某事 / 某计划是否可行” 时，一般有 think about，而不用 think of。如：

I'll never think about that thing. (我不会再回想那件事。)

(2) think over 意为 “仔细考虑；慎重考虑”，比 think of 与 think about 更深入与慎重。如：

Think it over, and we'll find a way to solve this problem.

(仔细考虑一下，我们会找到办法来解决这个问题的。)

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 琳达听到那首歌的时候，想起了她的一位朋友。

☒ Linda thought about one of her friends when she heard that song.

☐ Linda thought of one of her friends when she heard that song.

02. 他说他需要几天时间来仔细考虑一下这件事情。

☒ He said he needed several days to think this matter.

☐ He said he needed several days to think this matter over.

03. 我明天再给你答复，因为我需要考虑一下这个计划，看看是否可行。

☒ I'll give you my answer tomorrow, because I need to think of the plan and see if it is practicable.

☐ I'll give you my answer tomorrow, because I need to think about the plan and see if it is practicable.

04. 凯特，你打算和杰克去旅游吗？

☒ Kate, are you thinking about taking a trip with Jake?

☐ Kate, are you thinking of taking a trip with Jake?

05. 不要因为他犯过一次小错误，就对他产生坏印象。

☒ Don't think ill about him just because he made a mistake last time.

☐ Don't think ill of him just because he made a mistake last time.

06. 我从来不认为自己是那样的人。

☒ I never thought over myself in that way.

☐ I never thought of myself in that way.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. I can \_\_\_\_\_ I have met Carol at least three times this morning.

☐ A think about

☐ B think over

☐ C think of

02. Jimmy is forward to help others, and he is always \_\_\_\_\_ others.

☐ A thinking of

☐ B thinking over

☐ C thinking to

03. My dad is thinking \_\_\_\_\_ buying a new car.

☐ A for

☐ B over

☐ C of/about

04. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ going to the cinema this weekend.

☐ A thinking of

☐ B thinking over

☐ C thinking

05. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ an idea for me? I'm brain dead.

☐ A think of

☐ B think about

☐ C think over

06. Ada often \_\_\_\_\_ what her mother said.

☐ A thought of

☐ B thought over

☐ C thought

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ C 我记得今天早上跟凯洛至少碰过三次面了。

02. ☐ A 吉米不只热心助人，而且总是会为人着想。

03. ☐ C 我爸在考虑买一辆新车。

04. ☐ A 我打算这个周末去看电影。

05. ☐ A 你可以帮我想个主意吗？我脑袋打结了。

06. ☐ C 艾达经常都会考虑到她妈妈的看法。

## 02 time 的用法

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: What is the central idea of this article?  
这篇文章的中心思想是什么?
- B: Its central idea is that with the changing time, women can do anything men can do.  
它的中心思想是, 随着时代的变迁, 女人可以做男人能做的任何事。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

time 的本意为 (时间), 是一个抽象的不可数名词, 我们常说的 (光阴似箭) 即可译为 "How time flies!", 询问时间时有两种说法, 分别为 "What time is it?" 以及 "What's the time?"。

time 作此意解时, 还有以下两种常用句型:

- (1) It's time (for sb.) to do sth. (某人) 是时候做某事了。

在使用该句型时需要注意的是: It is time 后面如果接 (that 从句) 时, 从句要用过去时。

- (2) I have no time to do sth. (我没有时间做某事。)

除基本意思外, time 还可表示 "一段时光" 或 "历史时期、时代"。作 "一段时光" 讲时, 是一个具有具体意义的可数名词; 作 "历史时期、时代、境况" 讲时, 必须用复数形式 times 来表示。

范例中, the changing time 译作 "变迁的时代", time 应该用其复数形式 times。因此正确的说法应为:

Its central idea is that with the changing times, women can do anything men can.

(变革时代的中心思想是，所有男人做得到的事女人都可以做。)

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 我们该下班了。

☒ It's time that we get off work.

☐ It's time that we got off work.

02. 我没有时间吃早餐，因为上学要迟到了。

☒ I have not times to have breakfast because I'll be late for school.

☐ I have no time to have breakfast because I'll be late for school.

03. 你在莉莉的生日派对上玩得开心吗？

☒ Did you have good time at Lily's birthday party?

☐ Did you have a good time at Lily's birthday party?

04. 这个方法节省了时间，所以我才能迅速地完成任务。

☒ This method saves a lot of times, so I can finish the task quickly.

☐ This method saves a lot of time, so I can finish the task quickly.

05. 吉姆和他的家人在那个小红岛上度过了一段美好的时光。

☒ Jim and his family have wonderful time on the island.

☐ Jim and his family had a wonderful time on the island.

06. 生命中总有些时候，我们必须作出正确的选择来实现我们的梦想。

☒ There is time in our lives when we have to make the right choices to realize our dreams.

☐ There are times in our lives when we have to make good choices to realize our dreams.



# 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. If there is no competitive pressure, we should \_\_\_\_\_ at school.  
☐ A has happy time      ☐ B have had a happy time      ☐ C has a happy time
02. It's time that we \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.  
☐ A have      ☐ B to have      ☐ C had
03. I \_\_\_\_\_ answering the question.  
☐ A have a difficult time      ☐ B has difficult time      ☐ C have difficult time
04. In \_\_\_\_\_ the lifetime of humans was extremely short.  
☐ A ancient times      ☐ B the ancient times      ☐ C the ancient time
05. Rita \_\_\_\_\_ finding her pencil.  
☐ A had hard time      ☐ B have a hard time      ☐ C had a hard time
06. You do not need to envy his good body. It's time you \_\_\_\_\_ exercise.  
☐ A must do      ☐ B did      ☐ C will do
07. My friends and I spent our holiday in Hawaii, and we \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A had a wonderful time      ☐ B had wonderful time      ☐ C had wonderful times

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 如果不是有竞争压力，我们应该会有段愉快的求学时光。

02. ☐ C 我们该吃午餐了。

03. ☐ A 回答问题让我很痛苦。

04. ☐ A 古时候人类的寿命很短。

05. ☐ C 丽塔找她的铅笔找了很久。

06. ☐ B 你不用羡慕他的好身材。你该运动了。

07. ☐ A 我和我朋友到夏威夷去度假，我们度过了愉快的时光。

## 03 help 的用法

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Can you help me to my French?  
你能帮助我学法语吗?

B: Yes. Of course.  
当然可以。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

help 作动词, 意为“帮助、协助、援助、促进、促使”。该词有以下几种句型, 所表达的意思也有所区别。

(1) help sb. (to) do sth. 意为“帮助某人做某事”, to 现在一般都会省略; help sb. with sth. 意为“在某方面帮助某人”, with 是介词, 后面接名词; help (to) do sth. 意为“有助于做某事”; help oneself (to) 意为“自用(食物等)”; help sb. out 意为“帮助某人克服困难、渡过难关、解决问题、完成工作”。

范例中, A 所要表达的意思是“在法语学习方面得到帮助”, 应该使用句型 help sb. with sth., 因此正确的说法应为:

Can you help me with my French?

(2) 另外, help 与 can't 连用时的特殊用法有: a) can't help doing sth. 意为“情不自禁做某事”; b) can't help but do sth. 意为“不得不做某事”。

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 这本书有助于提高我的英语水准。

☒ This book helps with improving my English.

☐ This book helps improve my English.

02. 她情不自禁地哭了起来。

☒ She couldn't help to cry.

☐ She couldn't help crying.

03. 朋友就是在我们处于困境的时候帮我们渡过难关的人。

☒ Friends are the people who always help us when we're in trouble.

☐ Friends are the people who always help us out when we're in trouble.

04. 你可以帮我做报告吗?

☒ Can you help me my report?

☐ Can you help me with my report?

05. 为了生活, 我不得不做这份工作。

☒ For a living, I can't help do the job.

☐ For a living, I can't help but do the job.

06. 请随意吃点蛋糕。

☒ Help to eat the cake.

☐ Help yourself to the cake.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. Joe helped me \_\_\_\_\_ my English.

☐ A to

☐ B with

☐ C of

02. I can't help you \_\_\_\_\_ the box.

☐ A carry

☐ B to carrying

☐ C carried

03. Please \_\_\_\_\_ some beer.  
☐ A help yourself      ☐ B help to      ☐ C help yourself to
04. Rita can't help \_\_\_\_\_ by his enthusiasm.  
☐ A be impressed      ☐ B to be impressed      ☐ C being impressed
05. Danny \_\_\_\_\_ with money when I'm in trouble.  
☐ A helped me out      ☐ B helped me in      ☐ C help me out
06. Lana, can you take this patient \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital?  
☐ A to      ☐ B into      ☐ C into of
07. I'll help you \_\_\_\_\_ the housework.  
☐ A with      ☐ B to      ☐ C of
08. I can't help but \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
☐ A going to work      ☐ B to work      ☐ C go to work
09. His speech helps us \_\_\_\_\_ the policy.  
☐ A understand      ☐ B understanding      ☐ C with understand
10. Sorry, I know nothing about this, so I can't \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A help you to do      ☐ B help you      ☐ C help you with

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 乔帮我学英语。
02. ☐ A 我没办法帮你搬这个箱子。
03. ☐ C 请自己随意喝点啤酒。
04. ☐ C 丽塔无法不对他的热情留下深刻印象。
05. ☐ A 当我有困难时，丹尼用金钱助我渡过了难关。
06. ☐ A 拉娜，你可以把这位病人送进医院吗？
07. ☐ A 我会帮你把功课做好的。
08. ☐ C 我不得不每天去工作。
09. ☐ A 他的演讲有助于我们了解这项政策。
10. ☐ B 抱歉，我对这个一点都不了解，所以没办法帮你解决问题。



## 04 hurt 的用法

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Lucy, what's wrong with you?

露西，你怎么了？

B: Mom, my stomach is hurt.

妈妈，我肚子痛。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

hurt 可作动词也可作形容词。

(1) 作动词时，可兼作及物动词与不及物动词，意为“刺痛、伤害、（使）痛心、（使）伤感情、危害、损害、受伤”，表示精神上或肉体上的“创伤”，即“使人的肉体受伤而疼痛”或“伤了某人的自尊心或感情”之意，作不及物动词时表示（痛）。另外，过去分词只作主语补语，不作形容词用。

(2) 作形容词时，意为“（身体上或感情上）受伤害的、受委屈的”，与 be 一起构成主语补语。

范例中，B 所要表达的是“肚子痛”，如上所述，表示“痛”一般用动词 hurt，因此正确的说法应为：

Mom, my stomach hurts. (妈妈，我的肚子好痛。)

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 汤姆从楼梯摔下来，受伤了。

☒ Tom is hurt himself when he fell down the stairs.

☐ Tom hurt himself when he fell down the stairs.

02. 佩妮没有被邀请去露西的生日派对，她感到十分难过。

☒ Penny deeply hurt because she had not been invited to Lucy's birthday party.

☐ Penny was deeply hurt because she had not been invited to Lucy's birthday party.

03. 他伤害了拉娜的感情。

☒ He is hurt Lana's feelings.

☐ He hurt Lana's feelings.

04. 他吼我时，我感到很伤心。

☒ I feel hurting when he yelled at me.

☐ I feel hurt when he yelled at me.

05. 我的手打篮球的时候受伤了。

☒ My hand is hurt when I was playing basketball.

☐ My hand hurt when I was playing basketball.

06. 在那次事故中没有人受重伤。

☒ Nobody badly hurt in the accident.

☐ Nobody was badly hurt in the accident.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. \_\_\_\_\_ you badly hurt?

☐ A Have

☐ B Did

☐ C Are

02. My feet \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ A hurt

☐ B hurts

☐ C is hurt

03. It won't \_\_\_\_\_ you to miss lunch for once.  
☐ A to hurt                      ☐ B hurt                      ☐ C be hurt
04. Many passengers were \_\_\_\_\_ when a truck and a bus collided.  
☐ A hurt                      ☐ B to hurt                      ☐ C hurting
05. The ball \_\_\_\_\_ him in the chest.  
☐ A hurting                      ☐ B to hurt                      ☐ C hurt
06. She \_\_\_\_\_ my feelings yesterday.  
☐ A hurts                      ☐ B was hurt                      ☐ C hurt
07. She \_\_\_\_\_ because Jerry didn't invite her.  
☐ A hurts                      ☐ B was hurt                      ☐ C hurt
08. The driver \_\_\_\_\_ himself badly in the traffic accident  
☐ A hurt                      ☐ B was hurt                      ☐ C hurts
09. He \_\_\_\_\_ when he heard what his mom said.  
☐ A hurts                      ☐ B hurt                      ☐ C was hurt
10. Don't be afraid. The rabbit won't \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
☐ A hurt                      ☐ B to hurt                      ☐ C be hurt

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ C 你伤得很严重吗？
02. ☐ A 我的脚好痛。
03. ☐ B 少吃一顿午餐没有关系。
04. ☐ A 卡车和公共汽车相撞时，许多乘客都受伤了。
05. ☐ C 球打到他的胸口上，使他受了伤。
06. ☐ C 她昨天伤了我的心。
07. ☐ B 因为杰瑞没邀请她，使她受到打击。
08. ☐ A 司机在车祸中受重伤。
09. ☐ C 他妈妈说的话让他很受伤。
10. ☐ A 别怕，这兔子不会伤害你的。

## 05 mind 的用法

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Do you mind I smoke here?

你介意我在这儿抽烟吗?

B: I'm sorry, but I do.

抱歉, 我介意。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

mind 作为动词有“介意、在乎”之意, 既可作不及物动词, 也可作及物动词, 主要用于疑问句和否定句, 请见以下说明:

(1) 作不及物动词时, 一般用于“Do / Would you mind if + 从句”这一句型, 表示询问对方“是否介意(说话人)做某事”。例如: “你介意我打开门吗?” 可译为“Do you mind if I open the door?” (你介意我打开门吗?)

针对这一问句有“同意”与“反对”两种不同的回答。表示“同意”时, 答语要用否定形式, 可直接用 No 来回答, 也可以用 Not at all. / Certainly not. 等其他形式来回答; 表示“反对”时, 答语要用肯定形式, 但是在用 yes 等词语回答之前一般用 I'm sorry / afraid... 等, 以缓和语气。

(2) 作及物动词时, 后面通常接名词、代名词、动词的 ing 形式、复合句、从句等, 例如, 上面的例子“你介意我打开门吗?” 也可以说成“Would you mind my opening the door?”

需要注意的是, Do / Would you mind doing sth.? 是表示为请他人做某事, 可译为“可否请您……?” 开头常用 would 表示请教对方的意愿, do 较少用, 答语与上述作不及物动词时情况一致。



范例中, Do you mind I smoke here? 是一个错误的句子, 如上所述, 如果句中的 mind 作不及物动词, 则应该在 mind 后面加 if; 如果 mind 作及物动词, 则 I smoke 应改为 my smoking。因此正确的说法为:

Do you mind if I smoke here? / Do you mind my smoking here?  
(你介意我在这里抽烟吗?)

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. A: 你介意我在这里踢足球吗? B: 不, 毫不介意。

☒ A: Would you mind my play football here?

B: No, not at all.

☐ A: Would you mind my playing football here?

B: No, not at all.

02. 请不要乱扔垃圾好吗?

☒ Would you mind not to throw litter?

☐ Would you mind not throwing litter?

03. 你介意我把收音机的音量调大一点吗?

☒ Do you mind I turn up the radio a bit?

☐ Do you mind if I turn up the radio a bit?

04. A: 你介意洗这些盘子吗? B: 没问题, 我马上去洗。

☒ A: Would you mind washing the plates?

B: Yes, no problem. I'll do it right away.

☐ A: Would you mind washing the plates?

B: Not at all. / Of course not. I'll do it right away.

05. 我晚一些去拜访你好吗?

☒ Do you mind to visit you later?

☐ Do you mind if I visit you later?

06. A: 你介意我说话声音大一点吗? B: 是的, 我介意, 我准备睡觉了。

☒ A: Do you mind if I speaking loudly?

B: No. I'm ready to go to bed.

☐ A: Do you mind if I speak loudly?

B: Yes, I do. I'm ready to go to bed.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. A: Lucy, I can't hear you clearly, would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ more loudly?

B: Sorry. I'll speak loudly.

☐ A speak

☐ B speaking

☐ C to speak

02. Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_?

☐ A if I turn the light on

☐ B I turn the light on

☐ C if I turning the light on

03. A: Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ the dictionary?

B: \_\_\_\_\_ Here you are.

☐ A passing; Yes, I do.

☐ B to pass; Certainly not.

☐ C passing; Certainly not.

04. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ all the time?

☐ A not swear

☐ B not to swear

☐ C not swearing

05. A: Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ this book away?

B: I'm sorry, \_\_\_\_\_. Because I'll read it later.

☐ A I take; but I do

☐ B if I take; of course not

☐ C if I take; but I do

06. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ the car? I'm very tired.

☐ A driving

☐ B drive

☐ C to drive

07. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ over here, David? Grandpa is sleeping now.

☐ A no reading

☐ B not read

☐ C not reading

08. Excuse me, would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ my car here?

☐ A my parking

☐ B I parking

☐ C my park

09. A: Lisa, would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ your bike away? I'm sweeping now.

B: \_\_\_\_\_. I'll do it in a minute.

☐ A moving; Yes

☐ B move; No

☐ C moving; No

10. Mrs. Brown, would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ this sentence again?  
A to explain                      B explaining                      C explained

答案及题目译文：

01. B 露西，我听不清楚你的声音，你可以再大声点吗？

02. A 你介意我开灯吗？

03. C A：你介意把字典传过来吗？

B：当然不会。字典给你。

04. C 你可以不一直骂人吗？

05. C A：你介意我把这本书拿走吗？

B：很抱歉，我介意，因为我等一下要看。

06. A 你来开车好吗？因为我好累。

07. C 大卫，不要在这里看书好吗？爷爷正在睡觉。

08. A 不好意思，你介意我把车停在这里吗？

09. C 莉莎，你可以把自行车移开吗？我正在打扫卫生。

10. B 布朗太太，你可不可以把这个句子再解释一遍？

## 06 welcome 的用法

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: You are **welcomed** to use my dictionary.  
我的字典你尽管用。
- B: Thank you very much.  
非常感谢。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

**welcome** 有很多种词性，在句子中可当作感叹词、名词、动词、形容词等，这里先介绍较常见的动词以及形容词用法，请见以下说明：

- (1) **welcome** 作动词时为及物动词，用来表达“欢迎（某人或某物）”。例如：

Let's **welcome** our special guests from Shanghai.  
(让我们欢迎来自上海的贵宾们。)

- (2) **welcome** 作形容词时，则用来表达“受欢迎的；令人喜欢的”。可解释为“被允许的；可随意使用……的”，表示乐于让某人做某事。值得注意的是，**welcome** 当做形容词使用时，需与被动语态中的动词用法分清楚，例如：

Justin is a **welcome** super star all over the world.  
(贾斯汀是全世界都欢迎的超级巨星。) → 形容词用法

Fast food is always **welcomed** by teenagers.  
(快餐总是受到青少年的欢迎。) → 被动语态动词用法

所以范例中的正确说法应为：You are **welcome** to use my dictionary.



## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 让我们欢迎我们的新同事。

☒ Let's welcome to our new colleagues.

☐ Let's welcome our new colleagues.

02. 我去拜访莉莉父母的时候，受到了他们热烈的欢迎。

☒ I was heartily welcome by Lily's parents when I visited them.

☐ I was heartily welcomed by Lily's parents when I visited them.

03. 欢迎你随时来看我。

☒ You're welcomed to visit me anytime.

☐ You're welcome to visit me anytime.

04. 大家热烈欢迎吉姆回到公司。

☒ Jim was warmly welcome back to the company.

☐ Jim was warmly welcomed back to the company.

05. 任何想来这里学习的人都是受欢迎的。

☒ Anyone who wants to come here to study will be welcomed.

☐ Anyone who wants to come here to study will be welcome.

06. 他提出了一个极受欢迎的建议。

☒ He came up with a most welcomed suggestion.

☐ He came up with a most welcome suggestion.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. This afternoon more than 50 students were lined up to \_\_\_\_\_ those visiting leaders.

☐ A welcome to

☐ B welcoming

☐ C welcome

02. Jerry's marriage was not \_\_\_\_\_ by his family.

☐ A welcomed

☐ B welcome

☐ C to welcome

03. You are \_\_\_\_\_ to use my bike.  
☐ A welcomed ☐ B welcome ☐ C to welcome
04. We \_\_\_\_\_ the students from the station to the school yesterday.  
☐ A welcome ☐ B welcomed ☐ C welcome to
05. A: Thanks for your cake. It's very delicious.  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_  
☐ A You're welcome. ☐ B You're welcoming. ☐ C You're welcomed to.
06. Tony is a \_\_\_\_\_ guest for my family.  
☐ A welcomed ☐ B welcome ☐ C welcoming
07. Nate doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ Jack.  
☐ A welcoming ☐ B welcome ☐ C welcomed
08. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ sign in the picture.  
☐ A welcoming ☐ B welcomed ☐ C welcome
09. It's a pleasure to \_\_\_\_\_ you to my home.  
☐ A welcome ☐ B welcomed ☐ C welcoming

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ C 这天下午超过 50 位学生排队欢迎前来参访的领导们。

02. ☐ A 杰瑞的婚姻没有得到他家人的认同。

03. ☐ B 欢迎你随时使用我的自行车。

04. ☐ A 我们昨天从车站到学校一路迎接我们的学生。

05. ☐ A A：谢谢你的蛋糕。非常美味。 B：不客气。

06. ☐ B 托尼是我们家随时都欢迎的客人。

07. ☐ B 内特不欢迎杰克。

08. ☐ C 图片里有一个欢迎的标志。

09. ☐ A 迎接你来到我们家是我的荣幸。

## 01 动词+动名词 vs. 动词+不定式

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Joy, please stop to cry and tell me what happened.

乔伊，不要哭了，告诉我发生了什么事。

B: I failed my English exam.

我英语考试不及格。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

在英语中，有很多动词或短语后面既可以接动名词又可以接不定式，后面所接形式不同，句子的意思也会发生变化，这些单词或短语又可以分为以下几种情况：

- (1) 动词 forget, remember, regret 等接不定式 (...to do) 作宾语时，意为“……将要做某事”，有未来的含意；接动名词 (...doing) 作宾语时，意为“……做过某事”，有完成的含意。需要注意的是，该类单词后面接动名词、动名词的完成时或不定式的完成时作宾语时，意义相同。
- (2) 动词 mean 接不定式 (mean to do) 当作宾语时，意为“打算做、想要做”，表示一种意图；接动名词 (mean doing) 当作宾语时，意为“意味着、意思是”，表示解释。动词 try 接不定式 (try to do) 当作宾语时，意为“设法做、尽力做”，表示一种决心；接动名词 (try doing) 当作宾语时，意为“试着做”，表示尝试。
- (3) 动词 want, need, require 接不定式 (...to be done) 当作宾语时，意为“想、要做……”，是用被动形式表示被动意义；接动名词 (...doing) 当作宾语时，意为“（必须、该……）”，是用主动形式表示被动意义。需要注意的是，若 need, require, want 后接动词成为句子主语所做的动作，则只能用不定式，不能用动名词。

- (4) 动词 stop 和动词短语 go on 后也可以接动名词或不定式，但不一定当作宾语。stop 接不定式 (stop to do) 当作副词时，意为“停下来去做……”，即要去做另外一件事；接动名词 (stop doing) 作宾语时，意为“停止做……”，即停止做正在做的事。go on 接不定式 (go on to do) 作副词时，表示“做完正在做的事之后，继续做另一件事”，即继续做另一件事；接动名词 (go on doing) 作副词时，“继续做一直在做的事”，即继续做原来就在做的同一件事。

范例中，A 所要表达的意思是“不要再哭了”，如上所述，停止做正在做的事应该用 stop doing sth. 因此正确的说法为：

Joy, please stop crying and tell me what happened.

(乔伊，请别再哭了，告诉我发生了什么事。)

- (5) 还有几个动词短语在接不定式与动名词时也表示不同意思：can't help 后接不定式时，意为“不能帮忙做某事”；接动名词当作宾语时，意为“禁不住做某事，情不自禁地做某事”。be used to 等接不定式时，意为“被用来做什么”；接动名词当作宾语时，意为“习惯于做什么”。look forward to 等接不定式时，意为“朝前面看某东西”；接动名词作宾语时，意为“期望做某事”。

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 我忘记把钥匙给你了。

✗ I forgot giving you the key.

☑ I forgot to give you the key.

02. 我的小狗每天都需要洗澡。

✗ My dog needs to wash every day.

☑ My dog needs to be washed every day.

03. 这部电影很感人，她情不自禁地哭了起来。

✗ The movie was very moving that she couldn't help to cry.

☑ The movie was very moving that she couldn't help crying.

04. 喝完一杯咖啡后，汤姆继续对他的朋友讲那个有趣的故事。

✗ After a cup of coffee, Tom went on to tell his friends that interesting story.

☑ After a cup of coffee, Tom went on telling his friends that interesting story.



05. 明天我会想办法买到那本书。

☒ I'll try getting the book tomorrow.

☐ I'll try to get the book tomorrow.

06. 我想他的意思是要点比萨，不要点沙拉。

☒ I think he meant ordering pizza rather than salad.

☐ I think he meant to order pizza rather than salad.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. I remembered \_\_\_\_\_ the CD to Linda, but she said I didn't.

☐ A give

☐ B giving

☐ C to give

02. He forgot \_\_\_\_\_ me the money yesterday, so he paid just now.

☐ A paying

☐ B to pay

☐ C pay

03. Kate didn't mean \_\_\_\_\_ you. You should forgive her.

☐ A hurting

☐ B to hurt

☐ C to be hurt

04. We stopped \_\_\_\_\_ a rest after jogging for a long time.

☐ A having

☐ B had

☐ C to have

05. Sorry, I'm very busy now, so I can't help \_\_\_\_\_ the boxes.

☐ A carrying

☐ B carried

☐ C to carry

06. Nicole, you can't go on \_\_\_\_\_ this way. You should begin a new life.

☐ A living

☐ B to live

☐ C lived

07. I need \_\_\_\_\_ my pot plant or it will dry out.

☐ A watering

☐ B to be watered

☐ C to water

08. I tried \_\_\_\_\_ the text without your help.

☐ A to reciting

☐ B reciting

☐ C recited

09. Don't worry. You'll be used to \_\_\_\_\_ here soon.

☐ A living

☐ B to live

☐ C lived

10. I'm looking forward to \_\_\_\_\_ from you soon.  
**A** heard                      **B** to hear                      **C** hearing

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. **B** 我记得我将 CD 给琳达了，她却说我没给她。
- 
02. **B** 昨天他忘了付钱给我，所以刚刚付了。
- 
03. **B** 凯特不是故意要伤害你的，你就原谅她吧。
- 
04. **C** 慢跑了一阵之后，我们停下来稍事休息。
- 
05. **C** 抱歉，我现在很忙，所以没办法帮忙搬这些箱子。
- 
06. **A** 妮可，你不能继续这样生活下去，你必须换个新的生活方式。
- 
07. **C** 我必须帮我的盆栽浇水，不然花会干死。
- 
08. **B** 我试着在没有你的协助下背完文章。
- 
09. **A** 别担心，你很快就会适应这里的生活了。
- 
10. **C** 我期待很快就会有你的消息。
-

## 02 一般过去时vs. 过去完成时

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: Have you watched the basketball match yesterday?  
你昨天看篮球比赛了吗?
- B: Yes, I did. It was great.  
是的, 我看了。很精彩!

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

一般过去时与过去完成时都表示发生在过去的事情, 但两者有明显的区别:

- (1) 一般过去时表示过去某个时间里发生的动作或状态, 即陈述过去的事实, 常和表示过去的时间副词 (ago, last, just now, yesterday) 连用, 从其动作的完成到现在之间有一段时间间隔。
- (2) 过去完成时表示在过去某一时间或动作之前已经发生或完成了的动作或状态。可以用介词短语或时间副词从句 (when, after, before, as soon as, by) 来表示, 也可以用一个表示过去的动作来表示, 还可能透过上下文来表示。其基本结构为: 主语 + had + 过去分词 (done) + 其他; 一般疑问句形式为: Had + 主语 + 过去分词 + 其他?

需要注意的是:

- a) 叙述历史事实, 可不用过去完成时, 而只用一般过去时。
- b) 两个动作如按顺序发生又不强调先后, 或用 then, and, but, so 等连词时, 通常用一般过去时。
- c) 在过去不同时间发生的两个动作中, 发生在先的, 用过去完成时, 发生在后的, 用一般过去时。

d) 在主从复合句中，若含有 **before**，一般在从句中使用一般过去时，主句中使用过去完成时；若含有 **after**，一般在从句中使用过去完成时，主句中使用一般过去时。

e) 表示意向的动词，如 **hope, wish, expect, think, intend, mean, suppose** 等，用过去完成时表示过去未曾实现的愿望、打算、想法或意图等，意为（原本……、未能……）。

范例中，“你昨天看篮球赛了吗？”是陈述过去的事实，且有具体的过去时间状语 **yesterday**，应用一般过去时来陈述，所以正确的说法应为：

Did you watch the basketball match yesterday?

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 吉姆走进办公室向老师问好。

- ☒ Jim had entered the office and had said hello to the teacher.
- ☐ Jim entered the office and said hello to the teacher.

02. 我到他家以前，他已经出去了。

- ☒ He went out before I got to his home.
- ☐ He had gone out before I got to his home.

03. 那时露西希望莉莉能来参加她的生日派对，但是莉莉没有来。

- ☒ Lucy hoped that Lily would come to her birthday party, but Lily didn't.
- ☐ Lucy had hoped that Lily would come to her birthday party, but Lily didn't.

04. 完成他的工作之后，他就回家了。

- ☒ After he finished his work, he went home.
- ☐ After he had finished his work, he went home.

05. 在我朋友吃完晚餐之前我就离开餐厅了。

- ☒ I left the restaurant before my friends finished dinner.
- ☐ I had left the restaurant before my friends finished dinner.

06. 当公共汽车来的时候，我在车站已等了 30 分钟。

- ☒ I was at the bus station for 30 minutes when a bus came.
- ☐ I had been at the bus station for 30 minutes when a bus came.



# 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. He \_\_\_\_\_ his dictionary, so I lent him mine.  
☐ A lose                      ☐ B lost                      ☐ C had lost
02. The thieves \_\_\_\_\_ when the police arrived.  
☐ A had run away            ☐ B ran away            ☐ C run away
03. We \_\_\_\_\_ that Lisa would come to visit us.  
☐ A hoped                      ☐ B hope                      ☐ C had hoped
04. He \_\_\_\_\_ around but saw nothing.  
☐ A looked                      ☐ B had looked            ☐ C looks
05. Luna said she \_\_\_\_\_ born in 1990.  
☐ A had been                      ☐ B /                      ☐ C was
06. The postman told me that my package \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A did not arrive            ☐ B has not arrived            ☐ C had not arrived
07. Tina \_\_\_\_\_ the housework before she went out shopping.  
☐ A did                      ☐ B was doing            ☐ C had done

答案及题目译文：

01. ☒ B 他的字典弄丢了，所以我把我的借给他。

02. ☐ A 那些小偷在警察到达之前就溜了。

03. ☒ C 我们本来希望莉莎会来看我们的。

04. ☐ A 他到处观望，但什么也没看到。

05. ☒ C 露娜说她是 1990 年出生的。

06. ☒ C 邮差告诉我我的包裹还没送到。

07. ☒ C 蒂娜出去逛街前已经做完家务了。

## 03 否定疑问句的回答

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Isn't your older brother a student?

你的哥哥不是学生吗?

B: Yes, he isn't.

是的, 他不是学生。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

否定疑问句表示说话者“惊异的情绪、责难的口吻或赞叹”，也可表示说话者的某种“建议、邀请、请求或看法”等，一般可用 be、can、do、have 等词各种时态的否定形式提问。在回答否定疑问句时，要特别注意得按照英语的使用习惯来回答。如果答句是肯定的，就用 Yes；如果答句是否定的，就用 No。不能将肯定和否定混在一起使用。例如：

Haven't you been to Paris before? (你没去过巴黎吗?)

No, I haven't. (是, 我没去过。)

Yes, I have. (不, 我去过。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：No, he isn't.

### 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. A: 你不懂法语吧?

✗ A: Don't you know French?

⊙ A: Don't you know French?

B: 不, 我懂。

B: No, I do.

B: Yes, I do.

02. A: Don't you like the present?

☐ A: 你不喜欢这个礼物吗?

☐ A: 你不喜欢这个礼物吗?

B: Yes, I do.

B: 是的, 我喜欢。

B: 不, 我喜欢。

03. 难道我没告诉过你吗?

☐ Not have I told you that?

☐ Haven't I told you that?

04. A: 你不会游泳吗?

☐ A: Can't you swim?

☐ A: Can't you swim?

B: 是的, 我不会。

B: Yes, I can't.

B: No, I can't.

05. 难道格林先生不是老师吗?

☐ Doesn't Mr. Green a teacher?

☐ Isn't Mr. Green a teacher?

06. 难道你昨天没看见露西吗?

☐ Did you see Lucy yesterday not?

☐ Didn't you see Lucy yesterday?

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. A: Can't you come to my birthday party?

B: \_\_\_\_\_. I'm too busy. Sorry.

☐ A Yes, I can.

☐ B No, I can.

☐ C No, I can't.

02. A: Isn't he handsome?

B: \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ A Yes, he is.

☐ B Yes, he isn't.

☐ C No, he is.

03. \_\_\_\_\_ Luna a nurse?

☐ A Aren't

☐ B Isn't

☐ C Doesn't

04. A: Aren't you a student?

B: \_\_\_\_\_ I'm a teacher.

☐ A No, I am.

☐ B Yes, I am.

☐ C No, I'm not.

05. \_\_\_\_\_ Jim late for school?  
☐ A Doesn't                      ☐ B Isn't                      ☐ C Can't
06. A: Didn't you watch the game last night?  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_  
☐ A Yes, I didn't.                      ☐ B Yes, I did.                      ☐ C No, I did.
07. \_\_\_\_\_ I asked you to go with me?  
☐ A Didn't                      ☐ B Wasn't                      ☐ C Haven't
08. A: Don't you know how to get there?  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ I'm a newcomer.  
☐ A Yes, I do.                      ☐ B No, I do.                      ☐ C No, I don't.
09. \_\_\_\_\_ you wait me for a moment?  
☐ A Aren't                      ☐ B Isn't                      ☐ C Can't
10. A: Don't you know about that old man?  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_  
☐ A Yes, I do.                      ☐ B Yes, I don't.                      ☐ C No, I do.

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ C A：你不能来参加我的生日派对吗？ B：是的，我很忙。抱歉。

02. ☐ A A：他不帅吗？ B：不，他很帅。

03. ☐ B 露娜不是个护士吗？

04. ☐ C A：你不是学生吗？ B：是的，我不是。我是老师。

05. ☐ B 吉姆上学没有迟到吗？

06. ☐ B A：你昨晚没看比赛吗？ B：不，我看了。

07. ☐ C 我没有邀请你跟我一起去吗？

08. ☐ C A：你不知道怎么去那儿吗？ B：是的，我不知道。我是新来的。

09. ☐ C 你不能等我一下吗？

10. ☐ A A：你不知道关于那老人的事情吗？ B：不，我知道。



## 04 形容词的词序问题

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Why are you so happy?

你为什么这么开心呢?

B: Because my mom bought me a new green beautiful silk dress yesterday.

因为我妈妈昨天买了一件又新又漂亮的绿色丝质裙子给我。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

- (1) 在英语中, 当名词有多个形容词修饰时, 其顺序为: 限定词→数词→描绘词  
(大小→长短→形状→新旧→颜色)→出处→材料性质、类别→名词。例如:

a new yellow leather bag (一个新的黄色皮包)

- (2) “限定词”包括: the, our, this, whose, some, plenty of 等。“描绘词”包括: pretty, cheap, great, big, long, tall, square, round, new, old, blue, red 等。“出处”指一个国家或地区的词, 例如: Italian, French 等。“材料”的形容词, 例如: leather, glass, silk 等。“类别”的形容词, 例如: evening dress, police car, writing desk 等。例句如下:

This is a beautiful small round old yellow French wood study.

(这是一间精美小巧圆形的旧式黄色法国木质书房。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为: Because my mom bought a new beautiful green silk dress yesterday.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 蒂娜的爸爸送给她一款精美的红色德国手机作为生日礼物。  
☐ Tina's dad gave her a Germany nicered phone as a birthday gift.  
☒ Tina's dad gave her a nice red Germany phone as a birthday gift.
- 
02. 这个新的小型棕色皮质手提包怎么样？  
☐ What about this new little brown leather handbag?  
☒ What about this little new brown leather handbag?
- 
03. 艾伦买了一件昂贵的俄国黑色皮大衣。  
☐ Allen bought an expensive Russian black fur coat.  
☒ Allen bought an expensive black Russian fur coat.
- 
04. 这张图片上有一只美丽的中国白孔雀。  
☐ There is a beautiful Chinese white peacock in the picture.  
☒ There is a beautiful white Chinese peacock in the picture.
- 
05. 苏珊非常喜欢这个精巧袖珍的日本娃娃。  
☐ Susan likes this little fine Japanese doll very much.  
☒ Susan likes this fine little Japanese doll very much.
- 
06. 我穿着一件短的黑色棉质T恤。  
☐ I am dressed in a black short cotton T-shirt.  
☒ I am dressed in a short black cotton T-shirt.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. The \_\_\_\_\_ girl is very smart.  
☐ tall pretty foreign    ☐ foreign pretty tall    ☒ pretty tall foreign
02. Mike has a \_\_\_\_\_ car.  
☐ large foreign white    ☐ large white foreign    ☒ white large foreign

03. That \_\_\_\_\_ boy is Jerry's brother.  
 A handsome little French      B French little handsome  
 C French handsome little
04. A: Is that your English teacher?  
 B: No. My English teacher is a \_\_\_\_\_ lady.  
 A tall charming American      B charming tall American  
 C charming American tall
05. My mom bought a \_\_\_\_\_ scarf.  
 A grey nice silk      B nice grey silk      C nice silk grey
06. He was singing a \_\_\_\_\_ song for her.  
 A lovely old Spanish      B old lovely Spanish      C old Spanish lovely
07. That \_\_\_\_\_ shopping bag is really cool.  
 A large plastic blue      B large blue plastic      C blue large plastic
08. The \_\_\_\_\_ house smells as if it hasn't been lived in for years.  
 A short grey wooden      B grey wooden short      C short wooden grey

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. C 这位漂亮高挑的外国女孩很聪明。
- 
02. B 迈克有一辆大型的白色进口车。
- 
03. A 那位俊俏瘦小的法国男孩是杰瑞的弟弟。
- 
04. B A：那位是你的英语老师吗？  
 B：不，我的老师是一位迷人高挑的美国女士。
- 
05. B 我妈妈买了一条很好的灰色丝质围巾。
- 
06. A 他当时正在唱一首可爱的西班牙老歌给她听。
- 
07. B 那个大的蓝色塑胶购物袋非常酷。
- 
08. A 那幢矮小的木造灰色房子闻起来像是已经很多年没人住了。
-

## 05 间接问句的用法

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: Excuse me. Can you tell me where is the nearest bus station?  
不好意思, 您能否告诉我最近的公共汽车站在哪里?
- B: Oh, I don't know where is the bus station. Sorry that I can't help you.  
噢, 我不知道公共汽站在哪儿耶。抱歉帮不上忙。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

直接问句和间接问句在句子中的呈现方式是不同的, 请见以下说明:

通常疑问句都是由陈述句当中的主语和动词倒装而形成的, 例如: He is a student. 必须将主语和动词倒装成为 Is he a student? 才能成为疑问句。将问句并入另一个问句中, 就成为间接问句。在间接问句的句型中, 附属的间接问句就成为句子中的 "名词从句", 整个从句也就成为主句中动词的宾语, 所以必须以一般句子结构出现, 亦即 "主语+动词……"。例如:

Can anyone tell me where my purse is? (有谁能告诉我我的皮包在哪儿?)

Do you know where you leave your handbag? (你记得你把手提包落在哪儿了吗?)

若是直接问句中没有疑问词 (who, when, where), 而是以 be 动词或助动词 (will, do, can...) 为首的 yes-no 疑问句, 此类疑问句当做间接问句使用时, 就可以疑问词 whether 或是 if 连接两个句子。例如:

Nobody knows whether / if Mike will come today. (没人知道迈克今天会不会来。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为: Can you tell me where the nearest bus station is?



## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 你知道现在几点吗?

☐ Do you know what time is it?☒ Do you know what time it is?

02. 你能告诉我意外是怎么发生的吗?

☐ Can you tell me how did the accident happen?☒ Can you tell me how the accident happened?

03. 你记得他的电话号码吗?

☐ Do you remember what is his phone number?☒ Do you remember what his phone number is?

04. 请让我知道你住在哪里。

☐ Please let me know where do you live.☒ Please let me know where you live.

05. 我不会告诉你他是谁。

☐ I won't tell you who is he.☒ I won't tell you who he is.

06. 能不能请您告诉我可以在哪里找到这个男人?

☐ Would you please tell me where can I find this man?☒ Would you please tell me where I can find this man?

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. I can't remember when \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Lee.

☐ A I saw☐ B did I see☒ C I did see

02. Don't tell my mother where \_\_\_\_\_. I'm hiding from her now.

☐ A I am☐ B am I☒ C me

03. Does anyone know how \_\_\_\_\_ the truth?  
**A** did he find out      **B** is he finding out      **C** he found out
04. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ come to the office today.  
**A** will Mr. Smith      **B** Mr. Smith will      **C** whether Mr. Smith will
05. None of them knows when \_\_\_\_\_ the school semester \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A** /; will begin      **B** will; begin      **C** if; begins
06. Can anyone tell me why \_\_\_\_\_?  
**A** is he here      **B** he here is      **C** he is here
07. The man will never forget what \_\_\_\_\_ his father \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
**A** did; tell      **B** /; told      **C** is; telling
08. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ Jessica was invited to the party?  
**A** if      **B** who      **C** did
09. It is surprised that nobody knows how \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A** old is Grandpa      **B** old Grandpa is      **C** is Grandpa old
10. Even his parents don't know \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
**A** where is he      **B** he is where      **C** where he is

答案及题目译文：

01. **A** 我不记得我什么时候看过李先生。

02. **A** 别告诉我妈妈我在哪。我正在躲她。

03. **C** 有谁知道他是怎么发现真相的吗？

04. **C** 我不知道史密斯先生今天会不会来办公室。

05. **A** 没有人知道学校这学期什么时候开学。

06. **C** 有谁能告诉我为什么他会在这儿吗？

07. **B** 那个男人没有办法忘记他父亲跟他说过的话。

08. **A** 你知道杰西卡有没有被邀请来参加这场宴会吗？

09. **B** 没有人知道爷爷几岁这件事真是太令人惊讶了。

10. **C** 连他的父母都不知道他现在在哪里。

## 01 have been to vs. have gone to

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Where is Mr. Smith?

史密斯先生在哪里?

B: He has been to New York.

他去纽约了。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

have been to 与 have gone to 后均可接地点,但是在用法与所表达的意思上有很大的区别。

(1) have been to 意为“曾经来过、去过、到过某地”,表示现在已不在那里了,强调“最近的经历”。可以用任何人称,通常可与表示次数的副词连用。后可接次数,如 once, twice 等,表示“去过某地几次”,也可和 just, never, ever 等词连用。

(2) have gone to 意为“已经到某地去”,表示还没回来,强调说话时该人不在现场,也可以理解为“动作的完成”,强调人已离开说话的地方。

范例中, B 所要表达的意思是“不在此地、去纽约了、还没有回来”,如上所述,应用 have gone to, 因此正确的说法应为:

He has gone to New York.

需要注意的是,两者在遇到 here, there, home, abroad 这四个地点副词时,要去掉 to。

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 他们已经到新加坡去了。

☐ They have been to Singapore.

☒ They have gone to Singapore.

02. 我去过那个博物馆两次。

☐ I have gone to the museum twice.

☒ I have been to the museum twice.

03. 杰克和他女朋友看电影去了。

☐ Jake has been to the cinema with his girlfriend.

☒ Jake has gone to the cinema with his girlfriend.

04. 佩妮不在这里，她去超市了。

☐ Penny isn't here. She has been to the supermarket.

☒ Penny isn't here. She has gone to the supermarket.

05. 我从没有去过日本。

☐ I have never gone to Japan.

☒ I have never been to Japan.

06. 你以前来过这里吗？

☐ Have you been to here before?

☒ Have you been here before?

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. We have \_\_\_\_\_ to the stationery shop and bought a pencil.

☐ A been

☐ B gone

☒ C went

02. Sophie has \_\_\_\_\_ to Italy three times.

☐ A gone

☐ B been

☒ C went

03. The children have \_\_\_\_\_ to swim in the swimming pool.



- A been                      B went                      C gone  
 04. Tina has been \_\_\_\_\_ here twice.  
 A to                      B of                      C /  
 05. He has \_\_\_\_\_ to visit hisaunt.  
 A went                      B gone                      C been  
 06. How many times have you \_\_\_\_\_ to Hawaii?  
 A been                      B went                      C gone  
 07. Lisa has \_\_\_\_\_ to the garden. I want to go, too.  
 A went                      B gone                      C been  
 08. Barry doesn't want to see you, so he has \_\_\_\_\_ to another country.  
 A gone                      B been                      C went  
 09. David likes traveling, but he has never \_\_\_\_\_ abroad.  
 A been                      B been to                      C gone  
 10. She has never \_\_\_\_\_ to Paris.  
 A went                      B gone                      C been

答案及题目译文：

01. A 我们已经去过文具店，还买了支铅笔。

02. B 苏菲去过意大利三次了。

03. C 孩子们已经去游泳池游泳了。

04. C 蒂娜来过这里两次。

05. B 他去找他阿姨了。

06. A 你去过夏威夷几次？

07. B 莉莎已经去花园了，我也想去。

08. A 巴瑞不想见你，所以他出国去了。

09. A 大卫喜欢旅行，但是他从未出过国。

10. C 她从未去过巴黎。

## 02 neither...nor vs. either...or

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Jim, why don't you taste the food?

吉姆, 为什么不尝尝这些食物?

B: Because I like either butter or cheese, and the food has some butter and cheese in it.

因为我既不喜欢奶油也不喜欢奶酪, 而这个食物里面两者都有。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

either 与 neither 都可当作连词, either 当作连词时可与 or 构成短语 either...or, 意为 "若非……就是……、或者……或者……", 表示两者或两种可能性中任择其一, 不能作否定句的主语; neither 作连词时可与 nor 构成短语, neither...nor 意为 "既不……也不……、既非……也非……", 表示两者都否定。这两个短语常用来连接两个并列成分, 但应注意以下几点:

(1) 动词的单复数形式必须和最靠近的一个主语保持一致, 人称代名词作主语也一样, 即采用 "就近原则" (动词与靠近的名词、代词在 "人称、数" 上保持一致)。

(2) 在表示一个人没有做某事, 另一个人也没做同一类事时, 可用 neither 或 nor 进行简略回答, 其结构为: Neither / Nor + 助动词 / 助动词 / be 动词 + 主语。

范例中, B 所表达的意思是 "既不喜欢奶油也不喜欢奶酪", 表示 "既不……也不……" 应用 neither...nor, 因此正确的说法应为:

Because I like neither butter nor cheese.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 你可以选择一样，果汁或汤。

☒ You can have neither fruit juice nor soup.

☐ You can have either fruit juice or soup.

02. 我不喜欢这个房间，既不宽敞又不明亮。

☒ I don't like this room because it is either spacious or bright.

☐ I don't like this room because it is neither spacious nor bright.

03. A: 大卫不是步行去上学的。

☒ A: David doesn't go to school on foot.

☐ A: David doesn't go to school on foot.

B: 我也不是。

B: So do I.

B: Nor do I.

04. 不是我错了就是你错了。

☒ Either I or you is wrong.

☐ Either I or you are wrong.

05. 杰克和我都不喜欢游泳。

☒ Neither Jake nor I likes swimming.

☐ Neither Jake nor I like swimming.

06. 珍妮不能准时到那里，我也不能。

☒ Jenny can't get there on time, or can I.

☐ Jenny can't get there on time, nor can I.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. It's neither cold \_\_\_\_\_ hot today.

☐ A nor

☐ B or

☐ C and

02. You can \_\_\_\_\_ write \_\_\_\_\_ make a phone call to answer the questions.

☐ A either / nor

☐ B neither / or

☐ C either / or

03. Either you or I \_\_\_\_\_ mad.  
☐ A is ☐ B am ☐ C are
04. Neither I nor Jim \_\_\_\_\_ a student.  
☐ A is ☐ B am ☐ C are
05. A: He didn't finish the work yesterday.  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ did I.  
☐ A Or ☐ B So ☐ C Neither
06. I can \_\_\_\_\_ write \_\_\_\_\_ speak French.  
☐ A either / nor ☐ B neither / nor ☐ C neither / or
07. \_\_\_\_\_ either you or I going there tomorrow?  
☐ A Is ☐ B Are ☐ C Am
08. When Joy is happy, she \_\_\_\_\_ sings \_\_\_\_\_ dances.  
☐ A either / nor ☐ B neither / or ☐ C either / or
09. A: I don't like sports.  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ do I.  
☐ A Or ☐ B So ☐ C Nor

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. ☐ A 今天天气不冷也不热。
- 
02. ☐ C 你可以用写的或打电话来回答这些问题。
- 
03. ☐ B 不是你就是我疯了。
- 
04. ☐ A 我和吉姆都不是学生。
- 
05. ☐ C A：他昨天没完成工作。 B：我也没有。
- 
06. ☐ B 我不会写也不会说法文。
- 
07. ☐ B 不是你就是我明天要过去那里吗？
- 
08. ☐ C 乔伊高兴的时候不是唱歌就是跳舞。
- 
09. ☐ C A：我不喜欢运动。 B：我也不喜欢。
-



## 03 other vs. the other vs. another

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: How many kids do you have?  
你有几个小孩?

B: I have two kids. One is ten and another is eight.  
我有两个小孩, 一个十岁, 另一个八岁。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

other, the other 以及 another 都可作不定代名词, 但三者 in 含义及用法上有所区别。

(1) other 可作形容词或代名词, 做形容词时意为“别的, 其他”, 其复数形式为 others, 在句中可作主语、宾语。

(2) the other 指总数为二时的“另外一个”, 经常与 one 搭配, 其复数形式为 the others, 特指某一范围内的“其他的(人或物)”, 此时的 other 作代名词。

(3) another 也可作形容词或代名词, 泛指同类事物中的三者或三者以上的“另一个”, 只能用于三个或更多的人或物, 前面不能加任何冠词, 后面也不能加 s, 若其后有数词或 few 修饰时, 则可接复数名词。

范例中, “有两个小孩, 一个十岁, 一个八岁”, 如上所述, 指两者中的一个应用 the other, 句中的 another 只能用于三个或更多的人或物, 因此正确的说法应为:

One is ten and the other is eight. (一个十岁, 另一个八岁。)

需要注意的是, 若泛指任一单数名词时用 another, 若指特定某单数名词时则必须用 the other; 若泛指某些复数名词时用 other+ 复数名词, 若指特定某复数名词时则必须用 the other+ 复数名词; others 相当于“other+ 复数名词”所以后面不能再接名词, the others 相当于“the other + 复数名词”; 一定范围内三者, 一个用

one, 另一个用 one 或 another, 第三个可用 the other 或 a third; 一定范围内除去一部分人或物, 剩余的全部用 the others, 若剩余部分不是全部时则用 others。

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 我不喜欢黑色, 这件你还有其他的颜色吗?

☒ I don't like black. Do you have this of the other colors?

☐ I don't like black. Do you have this of other colors?

02. 我们还需要几张桌子。

☒ We need other few desks.

☐ We need another few desks.

03. 这里有三位老师, 一位教英语、一位教数学、一位教历史。

☒ There are three teachers. The other teaches English, other teaches math and another teaches history.

☐ There are three teachers. One teaches English, another teaches math and the other teaches history.

04. 请把另一只手也伸过来。

☒ Give me another hand, please.

☐ Give me the other hand, please.

05. 这个不适合你, 试试另一个吧。

☒ This one doesn't fit you. Try the other one.

☐ This one doesn't fit you. Try another one.

06. 约翰比班上其他学生都聪明。

☒ John is cleverer than the other in his class.

☐ John is cleverer than the others in his class.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. Jim, why are you the only one here?  
Where are \_\_\_\_\_ of your group gone?  
**A** other                      **B** the others                      **C** the other
02. Let's think of \_\_\_\_\_ ways.  
**A** other                      **B** the others                      **C** the other
03. The project will be finished in \_\_\_\_\_ three months.  
**A** other                      **B** the others                      **C** another
04. I have two hats. One is black and \_\_\_\_\_ is grey.  
**A** other                      **B** the others                      **C** the other
05. The old man has three sons. \_\_\_\_\_ is a doctor, \_\_\_\_\_ is a teacher,  
\_\_\_\_\_ is an engineer.  
**A** One / one / another                      **B** Another / another / the other  
**C** One / another / the other
06. It is hard to tell the twin sisters \_\_\_\_\_ from \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A** one / the other                      **B** the other / one                      **C** another / the other
07. Tina is more careful than \_\_\_\_\_ members in the company.  
**A** other                      **B** the others                      **C** the other
08. This coat is too big. I'll try \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A** other                      **B** the others                      **C** another

答案及题目译文：

01. **B** 吉姆，为什么只有你一个人在这里？其他人呢？

02. **A** 让我们想想看有没有别的办法吧。

03. **C** 再追加三个月这项计划就能完成。

04. **C** 我有两顶帽子，一顶是黑色的，另一顶是灰色的。

05. **C** 老人有三个儿子。一位是医生，一位是老师，另一位是工程师。

06. **A** 这对双胞胎很难辨出谁是谁。

07. **C** 蒂娜比公司其他员工都要细心。

08. **C** 这件外套太大了，我要试穿另外一件。

## 04 shameful vs. ashamed

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: Your **ashamed** behavior makes us embarrassed.  
你丢脸的行为让我们很尴尬。
- B: I'm sorry for that.  
我很抱歉。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

shameful 与 ashamed 均为动词 shame 的形容词形式，含有“羞愧的”之意，但两者在具体含义及用法上有所区别。

(1) shameful 意为“可耻的；丢脸的”，指人或人的行为本身不光彩、不道德，是客观评价，表示事物本身是“可耻的”，既可作补语也可做形容词，作补语时，主语常指物。

(2) ashamed 意为“感到羞愧的；觉得惭愧的”，指主语本身感到惭愧、羞耻，是主观感觉，用于人，常做补语，一般用于 sb. be ashamed of 句型中。

范例中，“你的丢脸的行为”是指人的本身的行为不光彩、不道德，形容此行为应该用 shameful，因此正确的说法应为：

Your shameful behavior makes us embarrassed.

### 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 偷东西是可耻的行为。

- ☒ Stealing is an ashamed behaviour.
- ☐ Stealing is a shameful behaviour.



02. 他妈妈为他感到羞耻。

- ☒ His mom felt shameful of him.  
☐ His mom felt ashamed of him.

03. 珍妮为她自己如此愚蠢感到羞愧。

- ☒ Jenny is shameful of herself for being so stupid.  
☐ Jenny is ashamed of herself for being so stupid.

04. 她应该为她说这种谎而感到羞耻。

- ☒ She should be shameful of herself for telling such a lie.  
☐ She should be ashamed of herself for telling such a lie.

05. 这种思想是可耻的。

- ☒ It's an ashamed thought.  
☐ It's a shameful thought.

06. 这并不可耻。

- ☒ It's nothing to be shameful of.  
☐ It's nothing to be ashamed of.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. The criminal is \_\_\_\_\_ of himself for having done that.

- ☐ A shamed ☐ B ashamed ☐ C shameful

02. Robbing is a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ behaviour.

- ☐ A ashamed ☐ B shameful ☐ C shame

03. Students should not be \_\_\_\_\_ of asking questions in class.

- ☐ A ashamed ☐ B shameful ☐ C shame

04. You shouldn't have done that. What you've done is \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ A ashamed of ☐ B ashamed ☐ C shameful

05. How could you do that? You should be \_\_\_\_\_ of yourself.  
☐ A ashamed ☐ B shameful ☐ C shamed
06. That man doesn't think it's \_\_\_\_\_ to be a beggar.  
☐ A ashamed ☐ B shameful ☐ C shame
07. Lily was \_\_\_\_\_ of her rudeness.  
☐ A shame ☐ B ashamed ☐ C shameful
08. The poor boy was not \_\_\_\_\_ of his low origin.  
☐ A shame ☐ B ashamed ☐ C shameful
09. Tom played a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ role in the farce.  
☐ A shame ☐ B ashamed of ☐ C shameful
10. Luna was \_\_\_\_\_ being unable to answer the question.  
☐ A ashamed of ☐ B shameful ☐ C shame

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 这犯人对自己做了那种事感到很羞愧。

02. ☐ B 抢劫是一种可耻的行为。

03. ☐ A 学生不应该为在课堂上发问而感到羞耻。

04. ☐ C 你不该做那种事的，你应该为此感到羞愧。

05. ☐ A 你怎么能做那种事？你该为自己的行为感到惭愧。

06. ☐ B 那个人不认为当乞丐很羞耻。

07. ☐ B 莉莉对自己的无礼感到很羞愧。

08. ☐ B 这个穷孩子并不以自己出身低微而感到羞耻。

09. ☐ C 汤姆在这出滑稽剧中扮演一个丢人的角色。

10. ☐ A 露娜对自己没办法回答这个问题而感到羞愧。

## 05 sometime vs. sometimes vs. some time vs. some times

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: How do you go to school every day?

你每天怎么去学校?

B: On foot, but **some times** by bike.

步行, 不过有时候会骑自行车。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

sometime, sometimes, some time, some times 这四个词语或短语都可以表示时间, 但是具体的意思及用法有明显区别。

(1) **sometime** 是个时间副词, 意为“(过去或将来的)某一时刻;在某时期”, 通常出现在句子后半部。也可意为“任何时候”, 相当于 **anytime**; 还可以当形容词用, 意为“以前的”。

(2) **sometimes** 是个频率副词, 意为“有时候、偶尔、不时地”, 相当于 **at times**, 与 **occasionally, from time to time** 意思接近, 可以位于句首, 也可以位于 **be** 动词之后, 同时还可以位于动词前。

(3) **some time** 意为“一段时间、一些时间”, 一般指将来的某段时间。

(4) **some times** 意为“好几次、……次”, 这里的 **time** 当作“次数”。

※ 网络上有这样一句口诀, 可以帮助大家清楚区分四者的区别, 即:

分开是“一段”(some time), 相连为“某时”(sometime)。分开 s 是“倍、次”(some times), 相连 s 是“有时”(sometimes)。

范例中，B 所表达的意思是“有时骑车去上学”，如上所述，表示“有时”要用 sometimes，而句中的 some times 表示的是次数，因此正确的说法应为：

On foot, but sometimes by bike.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 这可能会花你一些时间。

☒ This may take you sometime.

☐ This may take you some time.

02. 那场交通事故发生在去年的某个时期。

☒ The traffic accident happened sometimes last year.

☐ The traffic accident happened sometime last year.

03. 有时候，我喜欢一个人旅游。

☒ Sometime, I like traveling alone.

☐ Sometimes, I like traveling alone.

04. 我去过那儿几次。

☒ I have been there sometimes.

☐ I have been there some times.

05. 你任何时候都可以过来这儿借书。

☒ You can come and borrow the book some time.

☐ You can come and borrow the book sometime.

06. 我妈妈有时候脾气很暴躁。

☒ My mom is some times very hot-tempered.

☐ My mom is sometimes very hot-tempered.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。



01. I saw John \_\_\_\_\_ last month.  
☐ A sometime      ☐ B some time      ☐ C sometimes
02. Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ writes to me.  
☐ A sometime      ☐ B some time      ☐ C sometimes
03. Sam, a \_\_\_\_\_ lecturer of English of the college, is now the headmaster.  
☐ A some time      ☐ B sometime      ☐ C some times
04. Jim's house is \_\_\_\_\_ larger than Jan's.  
☐ A sometime      ☐ B some time      ☐ C some times
05. My grandparents will stay here for \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A sometime      ☐ B some time      ☐ C sometimes
06. Rita will be back \_\_\_\_\_ in May.  
☐ A some times      ☐ B some time      ☐ C sometime
07. \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher wonders if Ann is clever.  
☐ A sometimes      ☐ B some time      ☐ C some times
08. All of us have studied math for \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A sometime      ☐ B some time      ☐ C sometimes

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ A 我上个月看过约翰。

02. ☐ C 露西有时候会写信给我。

03. ☐ B 山姆以前是这所大学的英语讲师，现在已经升为校长了。

04. ☐ C 吉姆的房子比珍的大了几倍。

05. ☐ B 我祖父母会在这里住一段时间。

06. ☐ C 丽塔五月会回来。

07. ☐ A 有时候老师会忍不住想，安到底算不算聪明。

08. ☐ B 我们所有人都学过一段时间数学了。

## 06 one 的指示代名词

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Who has a dictionary?

谁有字典?

B: I have the one here.

我这里有一本。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

one 可作代名词, 在不同的场合用法也有所不同。

(1) one 作不定代名词时, 意为“任何人、谁都……”, 作人称代名词时, 意为“个人、某人”; 为避免重复, one 可以代替前面刚提到过的同一类人或物, 意为“一个、一本、一件……等”, 前面不加任何限定词, 其复数形式为 ones。

(2) 不定冠词 a/an 不可直接和 one 连用, 但 one 与形容词连用时, 该形容词前面常接 a, the, this, that, next, last, my, her 等限定词, 例如: a single one, the beautiful one。

(3) one 只能代替可数名词, 如果所代替的是特定的不可数名词, 就不能用 “the one”, 而应该用 that。

(4) one 通常不用在名词所有格和形容词性的所有格代名词 (如 mine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs, whose) 之后, 也不用在 own 和 both 之后。

(5) one 不可以替代句中的不定式或从句等充当主语或宾语, 也不可以替代上文全句的内容或部分内容。

范例中，B 所要表达的意思是“我这儿有一本字典”，如上所述，one 代替前面刚提到过的同一类人或物时前面不加任何限定词，所以句中的 the 应去掉，因此正确的说法应为：

I have one here.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 露西的书放在左边，莉莉的书放在右边。

☒ Lucy's books are kept left and Lily's ones are kept right.

☐ Lucy's books are kept left and Lily's are kept right.

02. 我觉得这部电影不如我们上次看的那部好。

☒ I think this film is not so good as one we saw last time.

☐ I think this film is not so good as the one we saw last time.

03. 老师告诉我们学习英语与学习中文一样重要。

☒ The teacher tells us that the study of English is as important as Chinese.

☐ The teacher tells us that the study of English is as important as that of Chinese.

04. 我的外套是黑色的，她的是白色的。

☒ My coat is black, her one is white.

☐ My coat is black, hers is white.

05. 这里有连衣裙吗？我要一条棉质的。

☒ Are there any dresses? I need cotton one.

☐ Are there any dresses? I need a cotton one.

06. 这台电脑是你借的，还是你自己的？

☒ Do you lend the computer or is it your own one?

☐ Do you borrow the computer or is it your own?

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. I have a new hat and several old \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A one                      ☐ B ones                      ☐ C the ones
02. John is \_\_\_\_\_ to solve all the problems.  
☐ A the one                      ☐ B ones                      ☐ C the ones
03. This room and \_\_\_\_\_ upstairs are being decorated.  
☐ A one                      ☐ B ones                      ☐ C the one
04. I need a cell phone; I think I must buy \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A ones                      ☐ B one                      ☐ C the one
05. There were a few old people and some younger \_\_\_\_\_ in the hall.  
☐ A /                      ☐ B one                      ☐ C ones
06. \_\_\_\_\_ must love his country.  
☐ A The ones                      ☐ B One                      ☐ C The one
07. Mr. Brown is the teacher, \_\_\_\_\_ who is loved by his students.  
☐ A the ones                      ☐ B one                      ☐ C the one
08. A: Have an orange, please.  
 B: No, thanks. I've just had \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ A the ones                      ☐ B one                      ☐ C the one

答案及题目译文：

01. ☐ B 我有一顶新的和几顶旧的帽子。

02. ☐ A 约翰就是那个能解决所有困难的人。

03. ☐ C 这间房间和楼上那间都正在装潢。

04. ☐ B 我没有手机，我想我得买一支了。

05. ☐ C 有几位老人和一些年轻人在大厅里。

06. ☐ B 每个人都应该爱自己的国家。

07. ☐ C 布朗先生就是一位相当受到自己学生爱戴的老师。

08. ☐ B A：吃一个橘子吧！

B：谢谢，不用了。我刚刚才吃完一个。



## 07 so vs. such

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Who is this? She is so a beautiful girl

这位是谁? 她真是一个美丽的女孩。

B: Her name is Judy, my best friend.

她叫朱迪, 是我最好的朋友。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

so 与 such 均有“如此、这么、那么”之意, 可以进行同义改写, 但在用法有所区别。

(1) so 作副词时, 意为“如此、这样”, 后面常接形容词或副词, 修饰单数可数名词时, 其结构为: so + adj. + a / an + 单数名词; 与 that 搭配时结构为 so + adj. / adv. + that + 从句。

(2) such 作限定词时, 意为“如此的、这样的”, 修饰名词, 可接可数名词也可以接不可数名词, 其常用句型结构有: such + adj. + n.; 修饰单数可数名词时结构为: such a / an + adj. + 单数可数名词; 与 that 搭配时结构为 such + n. + that + 从句。

需要注意的是, 只有 such 后面可接复数名词或不可数名词, 但是如果名词前有 few, many, little, much 等形容词时, 就必须用 so, 而不能用 such; 不过 a lot of 例外, 只能与 such 搭配。

范例中, A 所要表达的意思为“她一个如此美丽的女孩”, girl 为单数名词, 如上所述, 修饰名词时, so 的结构应为 so + adj. + a/an + 单数名词, 运用到句中应为 so beautiful a girl, 若要用 such 来修饰, 其结构应为 such a / an + adj. + 单数可数名词, 运用到句中应为 such a beautiful girl, 因此正确的说法应为:

She is so beautiful a girl 或 She is such a beautiful girl.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 他是一个如此聪明的孩子。

- ☒ He is such clever a child.  
☐ He is such a clever child.

02. 这是一件多么漂亮的外套。

- ☒ It's so a nice coat.  
☐ It's so nice a coat.

03. 露西是如此可爱的一个女孩，以至每个人都喜欢她。

- ☒ Lucy is so a lovely girl that everyone likes her.  
☐ Lucy is such a lovely girl that everyone likes her.

04. 这部电影如此精彩，以至于我想再看一次。

- ☒ This film is such wonderful that I want to watch it again.  
☐ This film is so wonderful that I want to watch it again.

05. 这类事情不应该再发生了。

- ☒ So kind of things should not happen again.  
☐ Such kind of things should not happen again.

06. 安静一点！不要这么吵！

- ☒ Be quiet! Don't make such much noise!  
☐ Be quiet! Don't make so much noise!

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. It is \_\_\_\_\_ weather that we decide to go out for a picnic.

- ☐ A such fine                      ☐ B so fine                      ☐ C fine such

02. There are \_\_\_\_\_ people in the cinema.

- ☐ A few so                      ☐ B such few                      ☐ C so few

03. The teacher spoke \_\_\_\_\_ quickly that I couldn't follow him.  
 A so B such C a so
04. He sings \_\_\_\_\_ well.  
 A so B so that C such
05. There are \_\_\_\_\_ clever students in the classroom.  
 A a so B a such C such
06. It is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A such fine a day B so a fine day C such a fine day
07. There are \_\_\_\_\_ books in the library.  
 A so many B such many C many so
08. \_\_\_\_\_ people like his songs.  
 A Such a lot of B So a lot of C A lot of so
09. There is \_\_\_\_\_ milk in the bottle.  
 A so little B such few C much so
10. It is \_\_\_\_\_ delicious food that all the kids want to taste it.  
 A so B such C such a

答案及题目译文：

01. A 天气这么好，所以我们决定去野餐。
02. C 电影院里人好少。
03. A 老师说话好快，我跟不上他。
04. A 他唱得真好。
05. C 这个班级里有这么聪明的学生们。
06. C 天气真好。
07. A 图书馆里有好多书喔。
08. A 有这么多人喜欢他的歌。
09. A 瓶子里的牛奶好少。
10. B 这食物美味极了，所有小孩都想尝尝。

## 08 what vs. which

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: What's that under the sofa?

沙发下面那是什么?

B: It's a dog **what** I found on the street.

它是我在路上捡到的小狗。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

which 和 what 两者都是疑问词，分别有不同的用法和含义，请见以下说明：

(1) what 用作疑问词时意为“什么”，可以用于选择范围较大或不明确的场合；which 用作疑问词时意为“哪一个”，可以用于选择范围较小或较明确的场合，但是，若指人，即使选择的范围不明确，也可用 which。例如：

What kind of movis do you like? (你喜欢哪一类电影?)

Which movie do you like? *Harry Potter* or *The Lord of the Rings*?  
(你喜欢哪一部电影，《哈利波特》或是《指环王》?)

(2) what 不可以用在关系从句中，而 which 可以引导关系从句，修饰表示事物的先行词，在关系从句当做主语、宾语或者形容词。例如：

I'm wearing a dress which my husband bought for my birthday this year.

(我身上穿的这件裙子是我先生今年买来送我的生日礼物。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：It's a dog which I found on the street.



## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 你想喝点什么?

- ☐ Which do you want to drink?  
☒ What do you want to drink?

02. 去博物馆最近的路是哪一条?

- ☐ What is the nearest way to the museum?  
☒ Which is the nearest way to the museum?

03. 玛丽有一条裙子, 那条裙子很漂亮。

- ☐ Mary has a dress, what is very nice.  
☒ Mary has a dress, which is very nice.

04. 这本书是关于什么的?

- ☐ Which is this book about?  
☒ What is this book about?

05. 书桌上的哪一本书是你的?

- ☐ What book is yours on the desk?  
☒ Which book is yours on the desk?

06. 她正在读一本关于音乐的书。

- ☐ She is reading a book, what is about music.  
☒ She is reading a book, which is about music.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. \_\_\_\_\_ subject do you like?

- ☒ A What ☐ B Which ☐ C That

02. \_\_\_\_\_ subject do you like, English or Chinese?

- ☒ A What ☐ B Which ☐ C That

03. \_\_\_\_\_ are you talking about?

- A** That                      **B** Which                      **C** What
04. This is the hat \_\_\_\_\_ I bought yesterday.  
**A** which                      **B** what                      **C** That
05. \_\_\_\_\_ of you knows the answer?  
**A** That                      **B** Which                      **C** What
06. \_\_\_\_\_ else have you bought in your trip to Japan?  
**A** What                      **B** Which                      **C** That
07. This is the book \_\_\_\_\_ I want.  
**A** That                      **B** what                      **C** which
08. There are many teachers in the office. \_\_\_\_\_ is your English teacher?  
**A** What                      **B** Which                      **C** That
09. He was reading a book, \_\_\_\_\_ he had borrowed from the library.  
**A** that                      **B** what                      **C** which
10. You look tired. \_\_\_\_\_ is your dream?  
**A** What                      **B** Which                      **C** That

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. **A** 你喜欢什么科目?
- 
02. **B** 你喜欢哪一个科目, 英语还是中文?
- 
03. **C** 你在说什么?
- 
04. **A** 这是我昨天买的那顶帽子。
- 
05. **B** 你们当中有谁知道答案?
- 
06. **A** 你去日本旅行还买了什么?
- 
07. **C** 这是我所喜欢的一本书。
- 
08. **B** 办公室里有很多老师。哪一位是你的英语老师?
- 
09. **C** 他正在读一本书。是他从图书馆借回来的那一本。
- 
10. **A** 你看起来很累。你梦到什么了?
-

## 09 whether vs. if

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Lily, please answer my question if you can come to my birthday party.

莉莉, 请告诉我你是否能来参加我的生日宴会。

B: Yeah, of course I can.

可以呀, 我当然能来。

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

whether 与 if 均可表示 "是否", 但两者在用法上有所区别, 请见以下说明:

(1) if 用于 know 或 wonder 等动词后, 可当作 whether 使用, 例如:

I don't know if I can pass the exam. (我不知道我是否可通过考试。)

if 可以引导否定的从句 (在 wonder, not sure 等词后有时也可用 whether)。

(2-1) whether 用于名词之后、不定式之前或介词之后时, 通常不能以 if 取代, 例如:

It depends on whether you want to go. (这得看你想不想去。)

(2-2) whether 可与 or 连用, 而 if 不可与 or 连用, 例如:

They'll go to visit our friends whether you come or not.

(不管你去不去他们都会去拜访我们的朋友。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为: Lily, please answer my question whether you can come to my birthday party.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 他不知道是不是该去那里。

☐ He doesn't know if to go there.

☒ He doesn't know **whether** to go there.

02. 汤姆很担心他是否会迟到。

☐ Tom is worried about if he will be late.

☒ Tom is worried about **whether** he will be late.

03. 如果你需要帮忙，可以打电话给我。

☐ Whether you need help, you can call me.

☒ If you need help, you can call me.

04. 我不在乎明天是否不会下雨。

☐ I don't care whether it won't rain tomorrow.

☒ I don't care **if** it won't rain tomorrow.

05. 我们将会讨论是否该去巴黎度假。

☐ We'll discuss if we should go to Paris for our holiday.

☒ We'll discuss **whether** we should go to Paris for our holiday.

06. 问题是我是否应该告诉她这个消息。

☐ The question is if I should tell her the news.

☒ The question is **whether** I should tell her the news.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. The mother didn't know \_\_\_\_\_ to laugh or to cry.

☐ A if

☐ B whether

☐ C /

02. You haven't answer my question \_\_\_\_\_ you get the book or not.

☐ A if

☐ B /

☐ C whether



03. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ it isn't right.  
☐ A / ☐ B whether ☐ C if
04. They're discussing \_\_\_\_\_ they should go on working.  
☐ A whether ☐ B / ☐ C if
05. \_\_\_\_\_ it is true, I will believe it.  
☐ A If ☐ B Whether ☐ C /
06. Ted, I shall go, \_\_\_\_\_ you come with me or stay at home.  
☐ A / ☐ B whether ☐ C if
07. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ it won't be sunny tomorrow.  
☐ A if ☐ B whether ☐ C /
08. I'll tell you \_\_\_\_\_ or not I can come.  
☐ A if ☐ B whether ☐ C /
09. \_\_\_\_\_ it is sunny or rainy, I shall go there.  
☐ A if ☐ B / ☐ C whether
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you ask Jim, he will help you carry the box.  
☐ A / ☐ B whether ☐ C if

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. ☐ B 这位母亲不知道该笑还是该哭。
- 
02. ☐ C 你还没有回答我你是否已经拿到书。
- 
03. ☐ C 我不知道它是否是不正确的。
- 
04. ☐ A 他们在讨论是否该继续工作。
- 
05. ☐ B 不管是不是事实我都相信。
- 
06. ☐ B 泰德，不管你跟我走还是留在家里，我都得走了。
- 
07. ☐ A 我不知道明天是否会晴天。
- 
08. ☐ B 我来或不来都会告诉你。
- 
09. ☐ C 不管是晴天或雨天我都会去那儿。
- 
10. ☐ C 假如你要求，吉姆会帮你提箱子。
-

## 10 could vs. would

### 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

A: Jim failed in his English exam again.

吉姆又没有通过英语考试。

B: How **would** he be so stupid?

他怎么会这么笨？

### 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

could 与 would 均为情态动词，两者在用法上有所区别，请见以下说明：

(1) could 表示能力时，意思是“能；会”，用来表达过去的习惯能力；表达可能性时，意思是“可能”；表示惊异、不信等情绪，常用于疑问句或否定句中；而表达与事实相反的情况，则常用于虚拟语气。例如：

I could speak English well when I was a high school student.

(当我还是个高中生时，我的英语说得很好。)

How could she be so elegant? (她怎么可以这么优雅。)

I could get the job if I had a second chance.

(如果还有第二次机会的话，我就可以得到那份工作了。)

(2) would 通常用于提出提议或邀请，委婉地表达自己的意见；如果要表示请求对方做一件麻烦的事情，通常会采用 would you mind + doing 的句型，这样的表达语气较为客气。例如：

Would you mind turning down the radio? (你介意将收音机关小声一点吗？)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：How could he be so stupid?

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 他怎么这么无礼?

☒ How would he be so rude?☐ How could he be so rude?

02. 想不想要来一杯咖啡?

☒ Could you like a cup of coffee?☐ Would you like a cup of coffee?

03. 可以将尺子递给我吗?

☒ Could you mind passing me the ruler?☐ Would you mind passing me the ruler?

04. 他无法回答你的问题。

☒ He wouldn't answer your question.☐ He couldn't answer your question.

05. 如果你愿意的话, 明天我可以过来。

☒ I can come tomorrow if you like.☐ I could come tomorrow if you like.

06. 露西能够早上六点起床。

☒ Lucy could get up at 6:00.☐ Lucy would get up at 6:00.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. The young man \_\_\_\_\_ look at the problem a little differently.

☐ A could☐ B would☐ C can

02. She \_\_\_\_\_ be delighted, if you went to see her.

☐ A would☐ B will☐ C can

03. She \_\_\_\_\_ go to the airport that day.  
☐ A wouldn't                      ☐ B would                      ☐ C couldn't
04. \_\_\_\_\_ you mind opening the window?  
☐ A Would                      ☐ B Could                      ☐ C can
05. My grandpa \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed strictly at 22:00.  
☐ A could                      ☐ B would                      ☐ C will
06. How \_\_\_\_\_ she be so beautiful?  
☐ A could                      ☐ B would                      ☐ C can
07. John \_\_\_\_\_ have enough money for a new computer.  
☐ A wouldn't                      ☐ B would                      ☐ C couldn't
08. You \_\_\_\_\_ pass the exam if you studied hard.  
☐ A will                      ☐ B can                      ☐ C could
09. \_\_\_\_\_ I speak to Mr. Smith, please?  
☐ A Could                      ☐ B Would                      ☐ C Will
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you like to buy a hat?  
☐ A Could                      ☐ B Would                      ☐ C Can

答案及题目译文：

- 
01. ☐ B 这位年轻人会以稍微不同的角度面对这个问题。
- 
02. ☐ A 如果你去看她的话，她会很开心。
- 
03. ☐ C 那一天她没有办法去机场。
- 
04. ☐ A 你介意开个窗吗？
- 
05. ☐ B 我爷爷准时晚上十点钟上床睡觉。
- 
06. ☐ A 她怎么可以这么美丽？
- 
07. ☐ C 约翰不可能有足够的钱买新电脑。
- 
08. ☐ C 如果你用功的话，你一定可以通过考试。
- 
09. ☐ A 请问，我可以和史密斯先生通话吗？
- 
10. ☐ B 你想要买一顶帽子吗？
-



Trap 4 语法陷阱. 语法使用差异篇

# 11 **than** 在比较级句型中的用法

## 01 语法使用错误范例

Sample of Wrong Grammar

- A: Is it okay that we have our class reunion party at your place?  
同学会在你的住处举办好吗?
- B: I'm afraid that my apartment is too small for the party.  
Let's ask Jeff. His apartment is much bigger than me.  
我的公寓要办同学会恐怕太小了。  
我们去问杰夫吧。他的公寓比我的大得多了。

## 02 语法误用详细解析

Grammar Analysis

以 **than** 比较两者时，要注意前后两者必须是相同性质的事或物。也就是说人要跟人比、事要跟事比、物要跟物比。例如：

My desk is messier than yours. (yours = your desk) (我的桌子比你的乱。)

I'm taller than you. (我比你高。)

My brother can run faster than I do. (我的弟弟可以跑得比我快。)

除了 **than** 之外的其他比较级用连词 **as...as** 也应注意相同情形。例如：

My brother's English is not as good as yours. (yours = your English)  
(我哥哥的英语不像你的英语那么好。)

所以范例中的正确说法应为：His apartment is much bigger than mine.

## 03 语法使用误用辨析

Grammar Error vs. Correct

01. 上海的房子比北京的房子贵。

- ☒ Houses in Shanghai are more expensive than Beijing.  
☐ Houses in Shanghai are more expensive than those in Beijing.

02. 你奶奶做的樱桃派尝起来比我妈妈做的好吃。

- ☒ Your grandma's cherry pie tastes better than my mother.  
☐ Your grandma's cherry pie tastes better than my mother's.

03. 我的学校比你的要远。

- ☒ My school is farther than you.  
☐ My school is farther than yours.

04. 今天的天气比昨天热。

- ☒ It is hotter than yesterday.  
☐ It is hotter than it was yesterday.

05. 他说故事比你精彩。

- ☒ He tells better stories than yours.  
☐ He tells better stories than you did.

## 04 语法陷阱辨析练习

Grammar Practice

请选出正确的选项。

01. He looks thinner than \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ A yesterday                      ☐ B he did yesterday                      ☐ C he was yesterday

02. The public order in Indonisa is better than \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ A in Thailand                      ☐ B Thailand                      ☐ C it is in Thailand

03. The blue skirt looks prettier than \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ A the pink                      ☐ B pink skirt                      ☐ C the pink one.

04. Things in the department store are more expensive than \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ A they are in the night market                      ☐ B the night market

05. Math homework is more difficult than \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A science                      B science homework                      C science one
06. Traffic in the city is heavier than \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A countryside                      B it is in the countryside                      C countryside's
07. The weather is more changeable in London than \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A Beijing                      B in Beijing                      C Beijing's
08. Life in the past was not as convenient as \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A nowadays                      B it is nowadays                      C in nowadays
09. Your dress looks more formal than \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A her                      B hers                      C she
10. Quitting smoking is not as easy as \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A quitting coffee                      B coffee                      C quit coffee

答案及题目译文：

01. B 他看起来比昨天还瘦。

02. C 印度尼西亚的公共秩序比泰国的还好一些。

03. C 蓝色的裙子看起来比粉红色的更漂亮。

04. A 百货公司的商品比夜市中的商品要贵。

05. B 数学的作业比科学的还要难。

06. B 城市中的交通比起乡下要更繁忙。

07. B 伦敦的天气比北京更多变。

08. B 从前的生活不像现代这么方便。

09. B 你的裙子看起来比她的更为正式。

10. A 戒烟不像戒咖啡这么简单。



# 全国第一本 思维导图学英语 正式诞生！

**不要考验自己的意志力！**

《英语语法超图解：30天用思维导图战胜英语语法》是第一本以全世界高材生都在使用的“思维导图（Mind Map）”来学习最冗长又最必备的英语语法，思维导图法除了达到刺激大脑记忆的效果，更能辅助读者快速掌握学习大纲以及快速“复习”两大学习重点。用最科学的方法来学习，有效降低挫折感，让学习变得更简单、容易持续！

## 最后一次花钱买英语语法书！ 英语语法学习元素一次到位！

**《英语语法超图解：30天用思维导图战胜英语语法》  
收录语法学习三大密切结合的学习项目：**

- 01 20个必懂英语语法观念→语法理论面
- 02 30个必学英语句型→语法应用面
- 03 40个必闪语法陷阱→语法技巧面

所有语法必备学习层面，《英语语法超图解：30天用思维导图战胜英语语法》一次收录，让你最后一次从口袋掏钱买语法书！

上架建议：英语学习/语法

ISBN 978-7-5064-8729-0



9 787506 487290 >

定价：39.80元